

# ***LINEAR ALGEBRA***

(MTH1 C02)

## **I SEMESTER**

2019 Admission)

## **M Sc MATHEMATICS**



**UNIVERSITY OF CALICUT**  
*School of Distance Education*  
*Calicut University P.O., Malappuram, Kerala, India - 673 635*

**190552**

**UNIVERSITY OF CALICUT**

**SCHOOL OF DISTANCE EDUCATION**

**Study Material**

**I SEMESTER**

**(2019 Admission)**

**M Sc MATHEMATICS**

**Core Course ( MTH1 C02)**

## ***LINEAR ALGEBRA***

*Prepared by:*

*Dr. Kavitha. T  
Assistant Professor,  
Department of Mathematics,  
Zamorin's Guruvayurappan College,  
Kozhikode.*

*Scrutinized by:*

*Dr. Sini. P,  
Assistant Professor,  
Department of Mathematics,  
University of Calicut.*

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>VECTOR SPACES OVER A FIELD</b>	<b>2</b>
1.1	Fields . . . . .	2
1.2	Vector Spaces . . . . .	4
1.3	Subspaces . . . . .	11
1.4	Bases and Dimension . . . . .	17
1.4.1	Basis . . . . .	19
1.5	Coordinates . . . . .	27
1.5.1	Representation of a vector in the matrix form relative to an ordered basis . . . . .	28
<b>2</b>	<b>Linear Transformations</b>	<b>33</b>
2.1	Linear Transformations . . . . .	33
2.1.1	Rank Nullity Theorem . . . . .	37
2.1.2	Algebra of Linear Transformations . . . . .	41
2.2	Invertible Linear Operators . . . . .	46
2.3	Isomorphism . . . . .	51
2.4	Representation of Transformations by matrices . . . . .	52
2.5	Linear functionals . . . . .	58
2.6	Double Dual . . . . .	71
2.7	The Transpose of a Linear Transformation . . . . .	80
<b>3</b>	<b>Elementary Canonical Forms</b>	<b>86</b>
3.1	Characteristic values . . . . .	86
3.2	Annihilating Polynomials . . . . .	101
3.3	Invariant Subspaces . . . . .	111
3.4	Direct- Sum Decompositions . . . . .	122
3.5	Invariant Direct Sums . . . . .	129
<b>4</b>	<b>Inner Product Spaces</b>	<b>134</b>
4.1	Inner Products . . . . .	134
4.2	Inner Product Spaces . . . . .	141

# Chapter 1

## VECTOR SPACES OVER A FIELD

It is both meaningful and interesting to deal with linear combinations of objects in a set  $X$ . In the study of linear equations we consider linear combinations of the rows of a matrix.

### 1.1 Fields

We have studied algebraic properties of real numbers. The operation called addition associates two real numbers  $x, y \in R$  to their sum  $x + y \in R$ . Also there is another operation called multiplication associates with each pair  $x, y \in R$ , an element  $xy \in R$ . Also we know how to add and multiply two complex numbers. Now let  $F$  denote either the set of real numbers or the set of complex numbers. Then addition and multiplication has the following properties.

1. Addition is commutative,  $x + y = y + x$  for all  $x, y \in F$ .
2. Addition is associative,  $x + (y + z) = (x + y) + z$  for all  $x, y, z \in F$ .
3. There is a unique element  $0$  (zero)  $\in F$  such that  $x + 0 = x$ , for every  $x \in F$ .
4. To each  $x \in F$  there corresponds a unique element  $-x$  in  $F$  such that  $x + (-x) = 0$ .

5. Multiplication is commutative,  $xy = yx$  for all  $x, y \in F$ .
6. Multiplication is associative,  $x(yz) = (xy)z$  for all  $x, y, z \in F$ .
7. There is a unique element  $1$  (one)  $\in F$  such that  $x1 = x$ , for every  $x \in F$ .
8. To each non-zero  $x \in F$  there corresponds a unique element  $x^{-1}$  or  $\frac{1}{x}$  in  $F$  such that  $xx^{-1} = 1$ .
9. Multiplication distributes over addition, that is,  $x(y + z) = xy + xz$  for all  $x, y, z \in F$ .

Suppose we have a set  $F$  of objects  $x, y, z, \dots$  and two operations on the elements of  $F$  as follows. The first operation called addition associates with each pair of elements  $x, y \in F$  an element  $x + y \in F$ , the second operation, called multiplication, associates with each pair  $x, y \in F$  an element  $xy \in F$  and these two operations satisfy all conditions above. The set  $F$  together with these two operations is then called a **field**. With the usual operations of addition and multiplication, the set  $C$  of complex numbers is a field, as is the set  $R$  of Real numbers. A **subfield** of the field  $C$  is a set  $F$  of complex numbers which itself is a field under the usual operations of addition and multiplication of complex numbers.

**Example 1.** 1. The set of **positive integers**:  $1, 2, 3, \dots$ , is not a field.

Since there exists no zero element.

2. The set of **integers**:  $\dots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \dots$  is not a subfield of  $C$ , because for integer  $n$ ,  $1/n$  is not an integer unless  $n$  is 1 or -1.
3. The set of rational numbers, that is numbers of the form  $p/q$ , where  $p$  and  $q$  are integers and  $q \neq 0$ , is a subfield of the complex numbers.
4. The set of all real numbers  $R$  is a subfield of  $C$ .
5. The set of all complex numbers of the form  $x + y\sqrt{2}$ , where  $x$  and  $y$  are rational is a subfield of  $C$ .

## 1.2 Vector Spaces

**Definition 1.1.** (*Vector space or Linear space*) A vector space or linear space consists of the following:

1. a field  $F$  of scalars
2. a set  $V$  of objects called vectors
3. an operation, called vector addition which associates each pair of vectors  $\alpha, \beta \in V$ , a vector  $\alpha + \beta \in V$ , called the sum of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  in such a way that
  - (a) vector addition is commutative;  $\alpha + \beta = \beta + \alpha$ .
  - (b) vector addition is associative; i.e.  $\alpha + (\beta + \gamma) = (\alpha + \beta) + \gamma$  for  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma \in V$ .
  - (c) There exists a unique vector  $0 \in V$ , called the zero vector, such that  $\alpha + 0 = 0 + \alpha = \alpha$  for every  $\alpha \in V$ .
  - (d) for each vector  $\alpha \in V$ , there is a unique vector  $\alpha^{-1}$  (called the additive inverse of  $\alpha$ ) in  $V$  such that  $\alpha + \alpha^{-1} = 0$ .
4. an operation called scalar multiplication, which associates each scalar  $c \in F$  and a vector  $\alpha \in V$ , a vector  $c\alpha \in V$  in such a way that
  1.  $1\alpha = \alpha$  for every  $\alpha \in V$
  2.  $(c_1c_2)\alpha = c_1(c_2\alpha)$
  3.  $c(\alpha + \beta) = c\alpha + c\beta$
  4.  $(c_1 + c_2)\alpha = c_1\alpha + c_2\alpha$ .

We say that  $V$  is a vector space over the field  $F$ .

**Example 2.** Let  $n$  be a positive integer.  $F^n$  is the set of all ordered  $n$ -tuples  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  where  $x_i \in F$ . Then show that  $F^n$  is a vector space over  $F$ .

**Solution:** We have  $V = F^n = \{(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n), x_i \in F\}$ .

Let  $\alpha = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  and  $\beta = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n) \in F^n$  and  $c \in F$ .

Then addition in  $F^n$  is defined as  $\alpha + \beta = (x_1 + y_1, x_2 + y_2, \dots, x_n + y_n)$  and the scalar multiplication in  $F^n$  is defined by  $c\alpha = (cx_1, cx_2, \dots, cx_n)$ .

Now the properties of vector addition are:

1.  $\alpha + \beta = (x_1 + y_1, x_2 + y_2, \dots, x_n + y_n) = (y_1 + x_1, y_2 + x_2, \dots, y_n + x_n) = \beta + \alpha$  so that vector addition is commutative.
2.  $\alpha + (\beta + \gamma) = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) + [(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n) + (z_1, z_2, \dots, z_n)] = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) + [(y_1 + z_1, y_2 + z_2, \dots, y_n + z_n)] = (x_1 + (y_1 + z_1), x_2 + (y_2 + z_2), \dots, x_n + (y_n + z_n)) = ((x_1 + y_1) + z_1, (x_2 + y_2) + z_2, \dots, (x_n + y_n) + z_n)$  (In each component we have used the associativity of addition in the field  $F$ )  $= (x_1 + y_1, x_2 + y_2, \dots, x_n + y_n) + (z_1, z_2, \dots, z_n) = [(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) + (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)] + (z_1, z_2, \dots, z_n) = (\alpha + \beta) + \gamma$ ; so that vector addition is associative.
3. Now  $0 = (0, 0, \dots, 0) \in F^n$  and  $\alpha + 0 = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) + (0, 0, \dots, 0) = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = \alpha$ , so that  $0$  is the zero vector in  $F^n$ .
4. For  $\alpha = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \in F^n$ , there is a unique vector  $\alpha^{-1} = (-x_1, -x_2, \dots, -x_n) \in F^n$ , such that

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha + (\alpha^{-1}) &= (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) + (-x_1, -x_2, \dots, -x_n) \\ &= (x_1 + (-x_1), x_2 + (-x_2), \dots, x_n + (-x_n)) \\ &= (0, 0, \dots, 0) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

For the scalar multiplication,  $c\alpha = c(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = (cx_1, cx_2, \dots, cx_n) \in F^n$ , and the following properties hold:

1.  $1\alpha = 1.(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = (1.x_1, 1.x_2, \dots, 1.x_n) = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = \alpha$ .
2. Let  $\alpha = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in F^n$

$$\begin{aligned}
 c_1 c_2 \alpha &= c_1 c_2 (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \\
 &= (c_1 c_2 x_1, c_1 c_2 x_2, \dots, c_1 c_2 x_n) \\
 &= c_1 (c_2 x_1, c_2 x_2, \dots, c_2 x_n) \\
 &= c_1 (c_2 \alpha).
 \end{aligned}$$

3. Let  $\alpha = (x_1, \dots, x_n), \beta = (y_1, \dots, y_n) \in F^n$

$$\begin{aligned}
 c(\alpha + \beta) &= c[(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) + (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)] \\
 &= c(x_1 + y_1, x_2 + y_2, \dots, x_n + y_n) \\
 &= (c(x_1 + y_1), c(x_2 + y_2), \dots, c(x_n + y_n)) \\
 &= (cx_1 + cy_1, cx_2 + cy_2, \dots, cx_n + cy_n) \\
 &= (cx_1, cx_2, \dots, cx_n) + (cy_1, cy_2, \dots, cy_n) \\
 &= c(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) + c(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n) \\
 &= c\alpha + c\beta.
 \end{aligned}$$

4. Let  $c_1, c_2 \in F$ , and  $\alpha = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \in F^n$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
 (c_1 + c_2)\alpha &= (c_1 + c_2)(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \\
 &= ((c_1 + c_2)x_1, (c_1 + c_2)x_2, \dots, (c_1 + c_2)x_n) \\
 &= (c_1 x_1 + c_2 x_1, c_1 x_2 + c_2 x_2, \dots, c_1 x_n + c_2 x_n) \\
 &= c_1(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) + c_2(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \\
 &= c_1\alpha + c_2\alpha.
 \end{aligned}$$



Thus  $F^n$  is a vector space over  $F$ .

Note that in Example 2 if we take  $n = 1$  and  $F = R$  we can see that  $R$  is a vector space over  $R$ ; if we take  $n = 2$  and  $F = R$  we can see that  $R^2$  is a vector space over  $R$ ; taking  $n = 3$ ,  $R^3$  is a vector space over  $R$  and so on.

**Remark 1.** The vector addition and scalar multiplication defined has major role in determining whether a set is a vector space or not as in Examples 3 and 4.

**Example 3.** Show that  $R^2 = R \times R$  is not a vector space over  $R$  when the vector addition is defined by  $(x_1, x_2) + (y_1, y_2) = (x_1 + y_1, x_2 + y_2)$  and the scalar multiplication is defined by  $c(x_1, x_2) = (cx_1, 0)$ , where  $x_1, x_2, y_1, y_2, c \in R$ .

**Solution:** Note that condition (1) under the scalar multiplication is not satisfied as  $1.\alpha = 1.(x_1, x_2) = (1.x_1, 0) = (x_1, 0) \neq \alpha$ . Hence  $R^2$  is not a vector space over  $R$  under the above defined operations.

**Example 4.** Show that  $R^2 = R \times R$  is not a vector space over  $R$  when the vector addition is defined by  $(x_1, x_2) + (y_1, y_2) = (x_1 + y_1, x_2 + y_2)$  and the scalar multiplication is defined by  $c(x_1, x_2) = (cx_1, x_2)$ , where  $x_1, x_2, y_1, y_2, c \in R$ .

**Solution:** We show that condition (4) under scalar multiplication in the definition of vector space is not satisfied by the multiplication defined in this example: For  $c_1, c_2 \in F$  and  $\alpha = (x_1, x_2) \in R^2$ , by the given definition of multiplication,  $(c_1 + c_2).\alpha = (c_1 + c_2)(x_1, x_2) = ((c_1 + c_2)x_1, x_2) = ((c_1x_1 + c_2x_1), x_2) \neq (c_1x_1, x_2) + (c_2x_1, x_2)$ . Thus  $(c_1 + c_2).\alpha \neq c_1\alpha + c_2\alpha$ .

**Example 5.**

The space of  $m \times n$  matrices,  $F^{m \times n}$ :

Let  $F^{m \times n}$  be the set of all  $m \times n$  matrices over the field  $F$ , where vector addition and scalar multiplication is defined as follows: For every  $A, B \in$

$F^{m \times n}$  and for every  $c \in R$

$$(A + B)_{ij} = A_{ij} + B_{ij}$$

and

$$(cA)_{ij} = c(A)_{ij}.$$

**Example 6.** The space of functions from any nonempty set to the field  $F$ . Let  $F$  be any field and  $X$  be any non empty set. Let  $V$  be the set of all functions from the set  $X$  into  $F$ . The sum of two vectors  $f, g \in V$  is defined as  $(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$ . The product of the scalar  $c \in F$  and a vector  $f \in V$  is defined as  $(cf)(x) = cf(x)$ .

Verification: (a) Vector addition is commutative i.e.  $(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x) = g(x) + f(x) = (g + f)(x)$ . Since  $f(x)$  and  $g(x)$  are elements of  $F$  and by the commutativity of elements of field  $F$ .

(b) Vector addition is associative. Again using the associativity of elements of field, we can see that

$$\begin{aligned} ((f + g) + h)(x) &= (f + g)(x) + h(x) \\ &= [f(x) + g(x)] + h(x) \\ &= f(x) + [g(x) + h(x)] \\ &= f + (g + h)(x). \end{aligned}$$

(c) Identity element exists.  $(f + 0)(x) = f(x) + 0(x) = f(x)$  where  $0$  is the zero function. Hence the zero function, is the identity element.

(d) Existence of additive inverse: For every  $f$  in  $V$ , there exists a function  $-f \in V$  which is given by  $(-f)(x) = -f(x)$  such that  $f + (-f) = 0$ , the zero function because  $(f + (-f))(x) = f(x) - f(x) = 0$ .

(e) For every  $f \in V$ ,  $1.f = f$  as:  $(1.f)(x) = 1.f(x) = f(x)$ .

- (f) We have  $(c_1c_2f)(x) = c_1c_2f(x) = c_2c_1f(x)$ , since  $c_1, c_2, f(x) \in F$ .  
 (g) We have  $c(f+g)(x) = c(f(x)+g(x)) = cf(x) + cg(x)$ .  
 (h)  $(c_1+c_2)(f)(x) = (c_1+c_2)(f(x)) = (c_1f(x) + c_2f(x)) = (c_1f + c_2f)(x)$ .

**Example 7.** Let  $F$  be a field and let  $V$  be the set of all functions  $f$  from  $F$  into  $F$  which have a rule of the form  $f(x) = c_0 + c_1x + c_2x^2 + \dots + c_nx^n$ , where  $c_0, c_1, \dots, c_n$  are fixed scalars in  $F$ . A function of this type is called a polynomial function of  $F$ . Let addition and scalar multiplication be defined as  $(f+g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$  and  $(cf)(x) = cf(x)$ .

Solution: Let  $V$  be the set of all polynomials in the indeterminate  $x$  with coefficients in  $F$  . i.e.

$$V = \{f : F \rightarrow F | f(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n : a_i \in F\}$$

Let

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n \\ g(x) &= b_0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 + \dots + b_nx^n \\ h(x) &= p_0 + p_1x + p_2x^2 + \dots + p_nx^n. \end{aligned}$$

be any three elements (i.e. polynomials) in  $V$ . Polynomial addition (vector addition) is defined by  $(f+g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$

$$= a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n + b_0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 + \dots + b_nx^n$$

$= a_0 + b_0 + (a_1 + b_1)x + (a_2 + b_2)x^2 + \dots + (a_n + b_n)x^n$ . and scalar multiplication is defined by  $cf(x) = c(a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n) = ca_0 + ca_1x + ca_2x^2 + \dots + ca_nx^n$ . Clearly  $f+g$  and  $cf$  also belong to  $V$ .

1. Commutativity of addition:

$$\begin{aligned} (f+g)(x) &= f(x) + g(x) \\ &= (a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n) + (b_0 + b_1x + b_2x^2 + \dots + b_nx^n) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= (a_0 + b_0) + (a_1 + b_1)x + \dots + (a_n + b_n)x^n. \\
&= (b_0 + a_0) + (b_1 + a_1)x + \dots + (b_n + a_n)x^n. \\
&= g(x) + f(x) \\
&= (g + f)(x)
\end{aligned}$$

2. 0, the zero polynomial, is the zero vector in  $V$ . 3. The inverse of  $f$  is  $(-f) \in V$ , where  $(-f)(x) = -f(x) = -a_0 - a_1x - a_2x^2 - \dots - a_nx^n$  in  $V$ . The student can easily verify all other properties for vector space.

### Example 8.

The field  $C$  of complex numbers may be regarded as a vector space over the field  $R$  of real numbers.

Is  $R$  a vector space over  $C$ ?

Solution: No, since  $c \in C$  and  $x \in R$  does not imply  $cx \in R$ . In particular,  $i \in C$  and  $2 \in R$  but  $2i$  does not belong to  $R$ .

Is  $R$  a vector space over  $Q$ ?

Solution: Yes. Since for every  $c \in Q$  and  $x, y \in R$  we have  $cx + y \in R$ .

Is  $Q$  a vector space over  $R$ ?

Solution: No, since  $c \in R$  and  $x \in Q$  does not imply  $cx \in Q$ . In particular  $\sqrt{2} \in R$  and  $1 \in Q$ , but  $\sqrt{2} \cdot 1 = \sqrt{2}$  does not belong to  $Q$ .

### Exercises

1. Show that  $V$ , the set of all vectors in the real plane is a vector space over  $R$ .
2. Show that  $R^3$ , the set of all vectors in the three dimensional real space is a vector space over  $R$ .
3. Prove that the set of integers is not a vector space over the set of rational numbers under usual addition and scalar multiplication.

4. Let  $V = C[0, 1]$  be the set of all real valued continuous functions defined over the closed unit interval  $[0, 1]$ . Show that  $V$  is a real vector space under the vector addition and scalar multiplication defined as follows: For every  $f, g \in V$  and for every  $c \in R$ .  $(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$  for every  $x \in [0, 1]$   
 $(cf)(x) = cf(x)$  for every  $x \in [0, 1]$ .

### Linear combination of Vectors

**Definition 1.2.** A vector  $\beta \in V$  is said to be a linear combination of vectors  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$  in  $V$  if there exists scalars  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n$  in  $F$  such that

$$\beta = c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n = \sum_{i=1}^n c_i\alpha_i.$$

We know that  $(1, 0)$  and  $(0, 1)$  are unit vectors in  $R^2$ . And if  $(x, y) \in R^2$ , then  $(x, y) = x(1, 0) + y(0, 1)$ . That is any vector in  $R^2$  is a linear combination of the two vectors  $(1, 0)$  and  $(0, 1)$ . Similarly in the case of  $R^n$ ,  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  can be written as a linear combination of the vectors

$$(1, 0, 0, \dots, 0), (0, 1, 0, \dots, 0), \dots, (0, 0, 0, \dots, 1) \in R^n.$$

That is

$$(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = x_1(1, 0, 0, \dots, 0) + x_2(0, 1, 0, \dots, 0) + \dots + x_n(0, 0, 0, \dots, 1).$$

## 1.3 Subspaces

In this section, we deal with some basic concepts in the study of vector spaces.

**Definition 1.3.** Let  $V$  be a vector space over the field  $F$ . A subspace of  $V$  is a subset  $W$  of  $V$  which is itself a vector space over  $F$  with the operations of vector addition and scalar multiplication on  $V$ .

Now we study a property of subspaces which helps us to check a given subset of a vector space  $V$  is a subspace or not.

**Theorem 1.1.** *A non-empty subset  $W$  of  $V$  is a subspace of  $V$  if and only if for each pair of vectors  $\alpha, \beta \in W$  and  $c \in F$ , the vector  $c\alpha + \beta$  is again in  $W$ .*

*Proof.* Assume that  $W$  is a non-empty subset of  $V$  is a subspace of  $V$ . Let  $\alpha, \beta \in W$ . Now  $W$  is itself a vector space over  $F$  by the definition of a subspace. Thus  $c\alpha \in W$  and  $\beta \in W$  and thus their sum  $c\alpha + \beta$  belongs to  $W$ .

Conversely assume that  $W$  is a non-empty subset of  $V$  such that  $c\alpha + \beta \in W$  for all vectors  $\alpha, \beta \in W$ . To prove that  $W$  is a vector space over  $F$ . Since  $W$  is non-empty, there is a vector  $\alpha \in W$  and hence  $(-1)\alpha + \alpha = 0$  is in  $W$ . If  $\alpha$  is any vector, and  $c$  is any scalar, then we have  $c\alpha = c\alpha + 0$ . Thus  $c\alpha$  is in  $W$ . In particular,  $(-1)\alpha + 0 = -\alpha$  is in  $W$ . Now if  $\beta$  is any other vector in  $W$ , then  $\alpha + \beta = 1\alpha + \beta \in W$ . Thus sum of vectors, additive identity, additive inverse and scalar multiple is there in  $W$  and  $W$  is a subset of vector space  $V$ , Thus  $W$  is itself a vector space over  $F$ . That is  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ .  $\square$

**Example 9.** 1. If  $V$  is any vector space,  $\{0\}$  is a subspace of  $V$ . Also the subset consisting of zero vector alone is a subspace of  $V$  called the zero subspace of  $V$ .

2. In  $F^n$ , the set  $W$  of  $n$  tuples  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  with  $x_1 = 0$  is a subspace. For,  $\alpha = (0, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ ,  $\beta = (0, y_2, \dots, y_n)$  and  $c \in F$ ,  $c\alpha + \beta = (0, x_2 + y_2, \dots, x_n + y_n) \in W$ .

3. The set  $W$  of  $n$ -tuples with  $x_1 = 1 + x_2$  is not a subspace ( $n \geq 2$ ). is not a subspace of  $V$ . For,  $\alpha = (1 + x_2, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  and  $\beta = (1 + y_2, y_2, \dots, y_n)$  and  $c = 1$ , then  $c\alpha + \beta = (2 + x_2 + y_2, x_2 + y_2, \dots, x_n + y_n)$  which is not an element of  $W$ .

4. The space of polynomial functions over the field  $F$  is a subspace of the space of all functions from  $F$  into  $F$ .
5. An  $n \times n$  square matrix  $A$  over a field  $F$  is symmetric if  $A_{ij} = A_{ji}$  for each  $i$  and  $j$ . The symmetric matrices form a subspace of the space of all  $n \times n$  matrices over  $F$ .
6. An  $n \times n$  square matrix  $A$  over the field of complex numbers is Hermitian( or self adjoint) if  $A_{jk} = \bar{A}_{kj}$  for each  $j, k$ . A  $2 \times 2$  matrix is Hermitian if and only if it has the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} z & x + iy \\ x - iy & w \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $x, y, z$  and  $w$  are real numbers. The set of all Hermitian matrices is not a subspace of the space of all  $n \times n$  matrices over  $C$ . For if  $A$  is Hermitian, its diagonal entries  $A_{11}, A_{22}, \dots$ , are all real numbers, but the diagonal entries of  $iA$  are in general not real.

Note that the set of all  $n \times n$  Hermitian matrices is a subspace of the space of all  $n \times n$  matrices over  $\mathbb{R}$ .

7. The solution space of a system of homogeneous linear equations. Let  $A$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix over  $F$ . Then the set of all  $n \times 1$  (column) matrices  $X$  over  $F$  such that  $AX = 0$  is a subspace of the space of all  $n \times 1$  matrices over  $F$ . To prove this we must show that  $A(cX + Y) = 0$  when  $AX = 0$ ,  $AY = 0$  and  $c$  is an arbitrary scalar in  $F$ . This follows immediately from the following general fact.

**Lemma 1.1.** *If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix over  $F$  and  $B, C$  are  $n \times p$  matrices over  $F$  then*

$$A(dB + C) = d(AB) + AC$$

for each scalar  $d$  in  $F$ .

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned}
[A(dB + C)]_{ij} &= \sum_k A_{ik}(dB + C)_{kj} \\
&= \sum_k (dA_{ik}B_{kj} + A_{ik}C_{kj}) \\
&= d \sum_k A_{ik}B_{kj} + \sum_k A_{ik}C_{kj} \\
&= d(AB)_{ij} + (AC)_{ij} \\
&= [d(AB) + AC]_{ij}
\end{aligned}$$

□

Similarly one can show that  $(dB + C)A = d(BA) + CA$ , if the matrix sums and products are defined.

**Theorem 1.2.** *Let  $V$  be a vector space over the field  $F$ . The intersection of any collection of subspaces of  $V$  is a subspace of  $V$ .*

*Proof* Let  $\{W_a/a \in \mathcal{A}\}$  be a collection of subspaces and,  $W = \bigcap_{a \in \mathcal{A}} W_a$  be their intersection. Since each  $W_a$  is a subspace, zero vector exists in each  $W_a$ . So zero vector belongs to their intersection  $W$ . Thus  $W$  is non-empty. Consider  $\alpha, \beta \in W$  and  $c \in F$ . Both  $\alpha, \beta \in W_a$  and since each  $W_a$  is a subspace, the vector  $c\alpha + \beta \in W_a$ . Therefore  $c\alpha + \beta$  belongs to their intersection  $W = \bigcap_{a \in \mathcal{A}} W_a$ . Hence  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ .

### Subspace Spanned by a Subset

**Definition 1.4.** *Let  $S$  be a set of vectors in a vector space  $V$ . The subspace spanned by  $S$  is defined as the intersection  $W$  of all subspaces of  $V$  which contains  $S$ . When  $S$  is a finite set of vectors,  $S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ . Then we denote  $W$  as the subspace spanned by the vectors  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ .*

**Theorem 1.3.** *The subspace spanned by a non-empty subset  $S$  of a vector space  $V$  is the set of all linear combinations of vectors in  $S$ .*



*Proof.* Let  $W$  be the subspace spanned by  $S$  and  $L$  be the set of all linear combinations of vectors in  $S$ . To prove that  $W = L$ . Let  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n \in S$ , Now  $\alpha = c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n$  is in  $W$ . Then each linear combinations of vectors in  $S$  belongs to  $W$ . Thus  $W$  contains the set  $L$  of all linear combinations of vectors in  $S$ . That is  $L \subseteq W$ .

Note that  $S$  is contained in  $L$ . Next we have to prove that  $W \subseteq L$ . In order to prove this, it is enough to prove that  $L$  is a subspace of  $V$  (Since  $W$  is the intersection of all subspaces of  $V$  containing  $S$ .) The set  $L$  contains  $S$  and is non empty. Let  $\alpha, \beta \in L$ , then each one is a linear combination of the vectors in  $S$ ; say,  $\alpha = c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n$  and  $\beta = d_1\beta_1 + d_2\beta_2 + \dots + d_n\beta_n$  where  $\alpha_i$  and  $\beta_j$  are vectors in  $S$ . Thus

$$\begin{aligned} c\alpha + \beta &= cc_1\alpha_1 + cc_2\alpha_2 + \dots + cc_n\alpha_n + d_1\beta_1 + d_2\beta_2 + \dots + d_n\beta_n \\ &= cc_1\alpha_1 + d_1\beta_1 + cc_2\alpha_2 + d_2\beta_2 + \dots + cc_n\alpha_n + d_n\beta_n. \end{aligned}$$

This implies that  $c\alpha + \beta$  is an element of  $L$ . Therefore  $L$  is a subspace of  $V$  which contains  $S$ . Also  $W$  is the smallest subspace of  $V$  containing  $S$  (since by definition it is the intersection of all subspaces containing  $S$ ), which implies that  $W \subseteq L$ . Thus  $L = W$ .  $\square$

**Definition 1.5.** If  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_k$  are the subsets of a vector space  $V$ , the set of all sum  $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \dots + \alpha_n$  where  $\alpha_i \in S_i$  is called sum of the subsets of  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_k$  and is denoted by  $S_1, S_2, \dots, S_k = \sum_{i=1}^k S_i$ .

If  $W_1, W_2, \dots, W_n$  are the subspaces of a vector space  $V$ , then the sum  $W_1 + W_2 + \dots + W_n$  is the set of all sum of vectors  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$  of  $\alpha_i \in W_i$ .

**Example 10.** 1. If  $S = \{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$  then  $L = \text{span}S = \{\alpha(1, 0) + \beta(0, 1) | \alpha, \beta \in R\} = \{(\alpha, \beta) | \alpha, \beta \in R\} = R^2$

2.  $(3, 7)$  belongs to the set of linear combination of the set  $\{(1, 2), (0, 1)\}$  because  $(3, 7) = 3.(1, 2) + 1.(0, 1)$ .

3.  $(3, 7)$  is not a linear combination of the vectors  $(1, 2)$ ,  $(2, 4)$ ; for if  $(3, 7) = c_1(1, 2) + c_2(2, 4)$ . then

$$c_1 + 2c_2 = 3 \quad (1.1)$$

$$2c_1 + 4c_2 = 7 \quad (1.2)$$

The above system of equation is inconsistent so that there exist no  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  satisfying the equations (1) and (2). Hence we can conclude that  $(3, 7)$  cannot be expressed as a linear combination of  $(1, 2)$  and  $(2, 4)$ .

4. Let  $V$  be the space of all polynomial functions over the field  $F$ . Let  $S$  be a subset of  $V$  consisting of the polynomial functions  $f_0, f_1, f_2, \dots$  defined by  $f_n(x) = x^n$ ,  $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$  i.e.

$$f_0 = 1, f_1 = x, f_2 = x^2$$

The subspace spanned by  $S$  is the set of all linear combination of elements of  $S$ . i.e. elements of the form  $a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots$

### Exercises

1. Show that  $W = \{(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) | x_i \in F, x_1 = 0\}$  is a subspace of  $F_n$ .
2. Which of the following sets  $U$  of vectors  $u = (c_1, \dots, c_n)$  in  $R_n$  are subspaces of  $R_n$  ( $n \geq 3$ )?
  - (a) all  $u$  such that  $c_1 \geq 0$ .
  - (b) all  $u$  such that  $c_1 + 3c_2 = c_3$ .
  - (c) all  $u$  such that  $c_2 = c_1^2$ .
  - (d) all  $u$  such that  $c_1c_2 = 0$ .
  - (e) all  $u$  such that  $c_2$  is rational.
3. Let  $W$  be the set of all vectors of the form  $(c, 2c, -3c, c)$  in  $R_4$ . Show that  $W$  is a subspace of  $R_4$ .
4. We know that  $C$ , the set of all complex numbers, is a vector space over  $\mathbb{R}$ . Then show that  $W = \{iy/y \in \mathbb{R}\}$  is a subspace of  $C$ .

## 1.4 Bases and Dimension

In this section we assign a dimension to certain vector spaces. We will define dimension of a vector space by using the concept of a basis of a space.

**Definition 1.6.** Let  $V$  be a vector space over  $R$  (or over the field  $F$ ). A finite set vectors  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$  in  $V$  is said to be linearly dependent if there exist real numbers (or scalars)  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n$  not all zeros such that  $c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n = 0$ , where  $0$  is the zero vector in the vector space  $V$ .

**Example 11.**

The set  $\{(1, 0, 1), (1, 1, 0), (-1, 0, -1)\}$  is linearly dependent in  $R^3$ .

Now  $c_1(1, 0, 1) + c_2(1, 1, 0) + c_3(-1, 0, -1) = (0, 0, 0)$  implies  $(c_1 + c_2 - c_3, c_2, c_1 - c_3) = (0, 0, 0)$  implies  $c_1 + c_2 - c_3 = 0, c_2 = 0, c_1 - c_3 = 0$  implies  $c_2 = 0, c_1 = c_3$ , which implies that  $c_1$  can take any arbitrary value, in particular take  $c_1 = 1$ , so that  $c_1 = 1, c_2 = 0, c_3 = 1$  and so scalars are not all zeros and  $1.(1, 0, 1) + 0.(1, 0, 1) + 1.(-1, 0, -1) = (0, 0, 0) = 0$ . Hence  $\{(1, 0, 1), (1, 1, 0), (-1, 0, -1)\}$  is linearly dependent.

The set  $\{(1, 2), (0, 0)\}$  is linearly dependent in  $R^2$  as there exist scalars 0 and 1 (not all zeros) such that  $0.(1, 2) + 1.(0, 0) = (0, 0)$ .

**Remark 2.** The set  $\{v_1, v_2, v_3\}$  of vectors is linearly dependent if and only if one of them is a linear combination of the other two vectors.

**Solution:** Suppose  $\{v_1, v_2, v_3\}$  is linearly dependent. Then there exist scalars  $c_1, c_2, c_3$  at least one of them, say  $c_1$  not equal to 0 such that  $c_1v_1 + c_2v_2 + c_3v_3 = 0$ . or  $v_1 = -\frac{c_2}{c_1}v_2 - \frac{c_3}{c_1}v_3$  which means that  $v_1$  is a linear combination of the vectors  $v_2$  and  $v_3$ .

Conversely suppose  $v_1$  is a linear combination of the other two vectors  $v_2$  and  $v_3$ . i.e. suppose that  $v_1 = -c_2v_2 - c_3v_3$  for some scalars  $c_2$  and  $c_3$ . Hence

$v_1, v_2, v_3$  is linearly dependent.

**Definition 1.7.** (*Linearly independent set*) A set is said to be linearly independent if it is not linearly dependent. Hence a finite set  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$  of vectors in the vector space  $V$  is said to be linearly independent if  $c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n = 0$  implies that  $c_1 = c_2 = \dots = c_n = 0$ .

Note that the null set is always taken to be linearly independent.

**Example 12.**

$\{(1, 0, 1), (1, 1, 0), (1, 1, -1)\}$  is linearly independent,

Solution: Now  $c_1(1, 0, 1) + c_2(1, 1, 0) + c_3(1, 1, -1) = (0, 0, 0)$  implies that  $(c_1 + c_2 + c_3, c_2 + c_3, c_1 - c_3) = (0, 0, 0)$ .  $c_1 + c_2 + c_3 = 0$ ,  $c_2 = -c_3$  and  $c_1 = c_3$ . Then  $c_1 = c_2 = c_3 = 0$ . Hence  $\{(1, 0, 1), (1, 1, 0), (1, 1, -1)\}$  is linearly independent.

**Remark 3.** 1. Any set which contains a linearly dependent set is linearly dependent.

2. Any subset of a linearly independent set is linearly independent.

3.  $\{0\}$ , the set consisting of zero vector alone, is linearly dependent as there exists such that  $\alpha \cdot 0 = 0$ , in particular  $1 \cdot 0 = 0$ .

4. Any set that contains the zero vector  $0$  is linearly dependent.

**Excercises**

1. Determine whether the subset  $\{(1, 0, 1), (1, 1, 1), (0, 0, 1)\}$  of  $R^3$  is a linearly independent or not.

2. Which of the following subsets  $S$  of  $R^4$  are linearly dependent?

(a)  $S = \{(1, 0, 0, 0), (1, 1, 0, 0), (1, 1, 1, 1), (0, 0, 1, 1)\}$ .

(b)  $S = \{(1, -1, 2, 0), (1, 1, 2, 0), (3, 0, 0, 1), (2, 1, -1, 0)\}$ .

3. Show that  $\{1, x, x^2\}$  is a linearly independent subset of  $P_2(x)$ .
4. Prove that  $\{1, 1+x, 2x+x^2\}$  is a linearly independent subset of  $P_2(x)$ .
5. Show that in  $R_3$ , the vectors  $v_1 = (-1, 2, 1)$  and  $v_2 = (3, 1, -2)$  are linearly independent.
6. Show that  $\{(1, 2, 3), (2, 3, 1), (3, 1, 2)\}$  is a linearly independent subset of  $R^3$ .
7. Show that the vectors  $v_1 = (1, 1, 2, 4)$ ,  $v_2 = (2, -1, -5, 2)$ ,  $v_3 = (1, -1, 4, 0)$  and  $v_4 = (2, 1, 1, 6)$  are linearly independent in  $R^4$ .
8. In  $R^n$  show that  $S = \{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n\}$ , where  $e_1 = (1, 0, 0, \dots, 0)$ ,  $e_2 = (0, 1, 0, \dots, 0)$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $e_n = (0, 0, 0, \dots, 0, 1)$  is linearly independent.

### 1.4.1 Basis

**Definition 1.8.** Let  $V$  be a vector space. A basis for  $V$  is a linearly independent set of vectors in  $V$  which spans  $V$ .

**Example 13.** 1.  $\mathcal{B} = \{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$  is a basis for  $R^2$ . Let  $(x, y) \in R^2$ . Then  $(x, y) = x(1, 0) + y(0, 1)$ . This means that any  $(x, y) \in R^2$  can be written as a linear combination of these two vectors. This means that  $\mathcal{B}$  spans  $R^2$ . On inspection one can verify that  $\mathcal{B}$  is linearly independent. Thus  $\mathcal{B}$  is a basis for  $R^2$  and is called standard basis for  $R^2$ .

2. The set  $\mathcal{B} = \{(1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 1)\}$  is a basis for  $R^3$ .

#### Solution

To prove that  $\mathcal{B}$  is linearly independent and it generates  $R^3$ . First we will show that  $\mathcal{B}$  generates  $R^3$ . i.e. to show that every element in  $R^3$  can be expressed as a linear combination of vectors in  $\mathcal{B}$ . To prove this let  $(x_1, x_2, x_3)$  be any element in  $R^3$  and also write

$$(x_1, x_2, x_3) = c_1(1, 0, 0) + c_2(0, 1, 0) + c_3(0, 0, 1) \quad (1.3)$$

We have to verify whether it is possible to write the scalars  $c_1, c_2, c_3$  in terms of  $x_1, x_2$  and  $x_3$ . Now 1.3 is equivalent to write,

$$(x_1, x_2, x_3) = (c_1, c_2, c_3),$$

so that  $x_1 = c_1$ ,  $x_2 = c_2$  and  $x_3 = c_3$ . so  $(x_1, x_2, x_3) = x_1(1, 0, 0) + x_2(0, 1, 0) + x_3(0, 0, 1)$ , which implies that  $\mathcal{B}$  generates  $R^3$ .

(ii)  $\mathcal{B}$  is linearly independent, for  $c_1(1, 0, 0) + c_2(0, 1, 0) + c_3(0, 0, 1) = (0, 0, 0)$

implies  $(c_1, c_2, c_3) = (0, 0, 0)$  implies  $c_1 = c_2 = c_3 = 0$ . Hence  $\mathcal{B}$  is a basis for  $R^3$ . This basis is called standard basis for  $R^3$ .

3.  $\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n\}$  where  $e_i$  is the  $n$  tuple whose  $i$ th coordinate is 1 and all other coordinates are zero. That is

$$e_1 = (1, 0, 0, \dots, 0), e_2 = (0, 1, 0, \dots, 0), \dots, e_n = (0, 0, 0, \dots, 0, 1)$$

. Then  $\mathcal{B}$  is a basis for  $R^n$  and is called standard basis for  $R^n$ .

4. Show that the set  $\mathcal{B} = \{(1, 2, 1), (2, 1, 0), (1, -1, 2)\}$  is a basis for  $R^3$ .

Solution

(i). First let us prove that  $\mathcal{B}$  generates  $R^3$ . i.e. to show that every element in  $R^3$  can be expressed as a linear combination of elements of  $\mathcal{B}$ . To prove this let  $(x_1, x_2, x_3)$  be any element in  $R^3$  and also write  $(x_1, x_2, x_3) = c_1(1, 2, 1) + c_2(2, 1, 0) + c_3(1, -1, 2)$  We have to verify whether it is possible to write the scalars  $c_1, c_2, c_3$  in terms of  $x_1, x_2$  and  $x_3$ . Now  $(x_1, x_2, x_3) = (c_1 + 2c_2 + c_3, 2c_1 + c_2 - c_3, c_1 + 2c_3)$ , so that

$$x_1 = c_1 + 2c_2 + c_3,$$

$$x_2 = 2c_1 + c_2 - c_3,$$

$$x_3 = c_1 + 2c_3,$$

which on solving gives

$$c_1 = 1/9(-2x_1 + 4x_2 + 3x_3),$$

$$c_2 = 1/9(5x_1 - x_2 - 3x_3),$$

$$c_3 = 1/9(x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3),$$

which implies that  $\mathcal{B}$  generates  $R^3$ .

(ii).  $\mathcal{B}$  is linearly independent.

For  $c_1(1, 2, 1) + c_2(2, 1, 0) + c_3(1, -1, 2) = (0, 0, 0)$  implies

$$(c_1 + 2c_2 + c_3, 2c_1 + c_2 - c_3, c_1 + 2c_3) = (0, 0, 0).$$

This implies

$$c_1 + 2c_2 + c_3 = 0; 2c_1 + c_2 - c_3 = 0; c_1 + 2c_3 = 0$$

implies

$$c_1 = c_2 = c_3 = 0$$

on solving.

5. Let  $P$  be an invertible  $n \times n$  matrix with entries in the field  $F$ . Then  $P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n$ , the columns of  $P$ , form a basis for the space of column matrices,  $F^{n \times 1}$ .

**Theorem 1.4.** *Let  $V$  be a vector space, which is spanned by a finite set of vectors  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m$ . Then any independent set of vectors in  $V$  is finite and contains no more than  $m$  elements.*

*Proof.* To prove this theorem we show that every subset  $S$  of  $V$  which contains more than  $m$  vectors is linearly dependent. Let  $S$  be such a set. In  $S$

there are distinct vectors  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ , where  $n > m$ . Since  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m$  spans  $V$ , there exists scalars  $A_{ij} \in F$  such that  $\alpha_j = \sum_{i=1}^m A_{ij} \beta_i$ . For any  $n$  scalars  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 \alpha_1 + x_2 \alpha_2 + \dots + x_n \alpha_n &= \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \alpha_j \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \sum_{i=1}^m A_{ij} \beta_i \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^n \sum_{i=1}^m (A_{ij} x_j) \beta_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^m \left( \sum_{j=1}^n A_{ij} x_j \right) \beta_i. \end{aligned}$$

If  $x_1 \alpha_1 + x_2 \alpha_2 + \dots + x_n \alpha_n = 0 \Rightarrow \sum_{i=1}^m \left( \sum_{j=1}^n A_{ij} x_j \right) \beta_i = 0$ , Since  $\beta_i \neq 0$ , we have

$\sum_{j=1}^n A_{ij} x_j = 0$  for each  $1 \leq i \leq m$ . {We have the following theorem on the solutions of linear equations.

If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix and  $n > m$ , then the homogeneous system of linear equations  $AX = 0$  has a nontrivial solution.}

Since  $n > m$  by this result, there exists scalars  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  not all zero such that  $\sum_{j=1}^n A_{ij} x_j = 0$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq m$ . This shows that  $S$  is a linearly dependent set. Thus we proved that any independent set of vectors in  $V$  is finite and contains no more than  $m$  elements.  $\square$

**Definition 1.9.** *The number of elements in a basis of a vector space is called dimension of the vector space. Dimension of a vector space  $V$  is denoted by  $\dim V$ . If  $\dim V = n$ , then any subset of  $V$  which contains more than  $n$  vectors is linearly dependent.*

**Example 14.** 1. The  $\dim R^3$  is 3 .

2. The  $\dim P_2(x)$  is 3.



3. The  $\dim P_n(x)$  is  $n + 1$ .

**Corollary 1.1.** *If  $V$  is a finite dimensional vector space, then any two bases of  $V$  have the same number of elements.*

*Proof.* Since  $V$  is finite dimensional, there exists a basis  $\mathcal{B} = \{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m\}$  consisting of finite number of elements. Then every basis of  $V$  is finite and contains no more than  $m$  elements, by Theorem 1.4. Thus if  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  is any other basis, then  $n \leq m$ . Now take  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  as a basis. Then by the similar argument as above we get  $m \leq n$ . Thus  $n = m$ .  $\square$

Note that Corollary 1.1 says that in a finite dimensional vector space all its bases have the same number of elements.

**Corollary 1.2.** *Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space and let  $n = \dim V$ . Then*

1. *any subset of  $V$  which contains more than  $n$  vectors is linearly dependent.*
2. *no subset of  $V$  which contains less than  $n$  vectors can span  $V$ .*

**Lemma 1.2.** *Let  $S$  be a linearly independent subset of a vector space  $V$ . Suppose  $\beta$  is a vector in  $V$  which is not in the subspace spanned by  $S$ . Then the set obtained by adjoining  $\beta$  to  $S$  is linearly independent.*

*Proof.* Suppose  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$  are distinct elements of  $S$ . Suppose  $\beta$  is a vector in  $V$  which is not in the subspace spanned by  $S$ . Now to prove that  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m, \beta\}$  is linearly independent. Let  $c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_m\alpha_m + b\beta = 0$ . If  $b \neq 0$ , then  $\beta = \frac{-c_1}{b}\alpha_1 + \frac{-c_2}{b}\alpha_2 + \dots + \frac{-c_m}{b}\alpha_m$ . This means that  $\beta$  is a linear combination of  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$ , which is a contradiction. Thus  $b = 0$ . So  $c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_m\alpha_m = 0$ , and since  $S$  is linearly independent set, each  $c_i = 0$ . This implies that  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m, \beta\}$  is linearly independent.  $\square$

**Theorem 1.5.** *If  $W$  is a subspace of a finite dimensional vector space  $V$ , every linearly independent subset of  $W$  is finite and is part of a basis for  $W$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $S_0$  be a linearly independent subset of  $W$ . If  $S$  is a linearly independent subset of  $W$  containing  $S_0$ , then  $S$  is also a linearly independent subset of  $V$ . Since  $V$  is finite dimensional,  $S$  contains no more than  $\dim V$  elements. We extend  $S_0$  to a basis of  $W$ . If  $S_0$  spans  $W$ , it is a basis for  $W$ . If not, we use the preceding Lemma to find a vector  $\beta_1 \in W$  such that  $S_1 = S_0 \cup \{\beta_1\}$  is independent. If  $S_1$  spans  $W$ , it is a basis and  $S_0$  is a part of the basis. If not, apply Lemma to obtain a vector  $\beta_2$  in  $W$  such that  $S_2 = S_1 \cup \{\beta_2\}$  is independent. Continuing the same argument we reach a set (in not more than  $\dim V$  steps)  $S_m = S_0 \cup \{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m\}$  which is a basis for  $W$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 1.3.** *If  $W$  is a proper subspace of a finite dimensional vector space  $V$ , then  $W$  is finite dimensional and  $\dim W < \dim V$ .*

*Proof.* Assume that  $W$  is a proper subspace of  $V$ , then there is an element  $\alpha \neq 0$  in  $V$  which is not in  $W$ . Thus, by the previous Theorem, there is a basis of  $W$  which contains not more than  $\dim V$  elements. Hence  $W$  is finite dimensional and  $\dim W \leq \dim V$ . Adjoining  $\alpha$  to any basis of  $W$ , by the Lemma, we obtain a linearly independent subset of  $V$ . Thus  $\dim W < \dim V$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 1.4.** *In a finite dimensional vector space, every non-empty linearly independent set of vectors is a part of a basis.*

*Proof.* Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space of dimension  $n$ . Let  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k\}$  be a set of independent vectors in  $V$ . Let  $W$  be a subspace spanned by  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k\}$ . Then by Theorem 1.5, we get every linearly inde-

pendent subset of  $W$  is a part of a basis for  $W$ . In particular  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k\}$  is a linearly independent subset of  $W$ . Thus it is a part of a basis.  $\square$

**Corollary 1.5.** *Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix over a field  $F$ , and suppose the row vectors of  $A$  form a linearly independent set of vectors in  $F^n$ . Then  $A$  is invertible.*

*Proof.* Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix over a field  $F$ , and suppose the row vectors of  $A$  form a linearly independent set of vectors in  $F^n$ . We have to prove that  $A$  is invertible. That is to prove that there exists a matrix  $B$  such that  $BA = I$ , where  $I$  is the identity matrix. Let  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$  be the row vectors of  $A$ , and suppose  $W$  is the subspace of  $F^n$  spanned by  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ . Since  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$  are linearly independent, the dimension of  $W$  is  $n$ . Then by corollary 1.3, we get  $W = F^n$ .

Now  $e_i \in F^n$  implies that  $e_i \in W$  and  $W$  is spanned by  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ . Hence there exists scalars  $B_{ij}$  in  $F$  such that  $e_i = \sum_{j=1}^n B_{ij} \alpha_j$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq n$ , where  $e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n$  is the standard basis of  $F^n$ . Thus for the matrix  $B$  with entries  $B_{ij}$  we have  $BA = I$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 1.6.** *If  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are finite dimensional subspace of a vector space  $V$ , then  $W_1 + W_2$  is finite dimensional and  $\dim W_1 + \dim W_2 = \dim(W_1 \cap W_2) + \dim(W_1 + W_2)$ .*

*Proof.* Since  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are finite dimensional vector spaces,  $W_1 \cap W_2$  is also a finite dimensional vector space (by the Corollary above). Let  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k\}$  be a basis of  $W_1 \cap W_2$ . This basis is a part of the basis  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m\}$  for  $W_1$  and a part of a basis  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k, \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_n\}$  for  $W_2$ . The subspace  $W_1 + W_2$  is spanned by the vectors  $S = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m, \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_n\}$ . We prove that  $S$  is linearly independent. For suppose  $\sum x_i \alpha_i + \sum y_j \beta_j + \sum z_r \gamma_r = 0$ . Then  $\sum x_i \alpha_i + \sum y_j \beta_j = -\sum z_r \gamma_r$ . Means that  $\sum z_r \gamma_r$  is a

linear combination of  $\alpha_i$  and  $\beta_j$ , which implies that  $\sum z_r \gamma_r$  belongs to  $W_1$ . Also  $\sum z_r \gamma_r$  is a linear combination of  $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_n$ . Therefore it belongs to  $W_2$  also. This means that  $\sum z_r \gamma_r$  belongs to  $W_1 \cap W_2$ . And therefore  $\sum z_r \gamma_r = \sum c_i \alpha_i$  for certain scalars  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  (Since  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k\}$  is a basis of  $W_1 \cap W_2$ ). Then  $\sum z_r \gamma_r = \sum c_i \alpha_i \Rightarrow \sum z_r \gamma_r - \sum c_i \alpha_i = 0$ . Since  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k, \gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_n\}$  is linearly independent, we get each of the scalars  $z_r = 0$ . Thus  $\sum x_i \alpha_i + \sum y_j \beta_j = 0$ . Again since  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k, \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n\}$  is linearly independent, each  $x_i = 0$  and each  $y_j = 0$ . Thus  $S$  is linearly independent. Hence  $S$  is a basis of  $W_1 + W_2$ . Finally

$$\begin{aligned} \dim W_1 + \dim W_2 &= (k + m) + (k + n) \\ &= k + (m + k + n) \\ &= \dim(W_1 \cap W_2) + \dim(W_1 + W_2). \end{aligned}$$

□

**Example 15.** Show that  $V$  is a vector space having  $m$  finite number of elements if and only if  $m = p^n$  where  $p$  is prime and  $n$  is a non-negative integer.

*Solution*

Suppose there exists a vector space  $V$  having  $m$  number of elements. Also suppose that the underlying field is  $F$ . Let dimension of  $V = n$ .

Let  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  be one basis for  $V$ . Then the elements in  $V$  are exactly the linear combination of the  $n$  vectors  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$ . That is  $a_1 \alpha_1 + \dots + a_n \alpha_n$ , where  $a_i, i = 1, 2, \dots, n$  belongs to underlying field  $F$ . If  $F$  has infinite number of elements, then  $V$  must have infinite number of elements, which is not the case here. Therefore  $F$  has finite number of elements, or  $F$  is a finite field. We know that every finite field is isomorphic to  $\mathbb{Z}_p$ , where  $p$  is a prime number. Thus  $F$  also must have  $p$  number of elements. Thus we can

say that  $V$  contains  $p^n$  elements, where  $p$  is a prime (Reason:  $V$  contains  $p^n$  elements, because we have freedom to choose all the  $p$  elements of  $F$  as  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n$ . Thus  $\underbrace{p.p.\dots p}_{n \text{ times}}$  elements will be there. Thus  $m = p^n$ . Now suppose  $m = p^n$ . Then consider  $V = Z_{p^n}$  and  $F = Z_p$ . Then  $V$  is a vector space over  $F$  having  $m$  number of elements.

**Example 16.** Does there exist a vector space having 8 number of elements?  
Solution

Yes. As  $8 = 2^3$  is an integral power of the prime 2.

### Exercises

1. Let  $V$  be a vector space of all  $2 \times 2$  matrices over the field  $F$ . Prove that  $V$  has dimension 4 by exhibiting a basis for  $V$  which has 4 elements.
2. Let  $V$  be a vector space over a subfield  $F$  of the complex numbers. Suppose  $\alpha, \beta$  and  $\gamma$  are linearly independent vectors in  $V$ . Prove that  $(\alpha + \beta), (\beta + \gamma)$  and  $(\gamma + \alpha)$  are linearly independent.
3. Let  $V$  be a vector space over the field  $F$ . Suppose that there are a finite number of vectors  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k$  in  $V$  which span  $V$ . Prove that  $V$  is finite dimensional.
4. Let  $V$  be the set of real numbers. Regard  $V$  as a vector space over the field of rational numbers, with the usual operations. Prove that this vector space is not finite dimensional.

## 1.5 Coordinates

One of the useful features of a basis  $\mathcal{B}$  in an  $n$ -dimensional space  $V$  is that it enables one to introduce coordinates in  $V$  analogous to the natural coordinates  $x_i$  of a vector  $\alpha = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  in the space  $F^n$ .

**Definition 1.10.** If  $V$  is a finite dimensional vector space, an ordered basis for  $V$  is a finite sequence of vectors which is linearly independent and spans  $V$ .

A basis  $\mathcal{B}$  of a vector space is said to be an ordered basis, if the elements in the basis  $\mathcal{B}$  are placed in some order.

For example,  $B_1 = \{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$  is an ordered basis for  $R^2$ , called the standard ordered basis for  $R^2$ . Then  $B_2 = \{(0, 1), (1, 0)\}$  is another ordered basis for  $R^2$ . Note that even though elements (vectors) in  $B_1$  and  $B_2$  are the same, they are different in the order sense.

### 1.5.1 Representation of a vector in the matrix form relative to an ordered basis

Consider a vector  $u = (u_1, u_2) \in R^2$ . Let  $B_1 = \{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$  and  $B_2 = \{(0, 1), (1, 0)\}$ . In terms of the basis  $B_1 = \{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$ ,  $u = (u_1, u_2)$  can be written as the linear combination,  $u = (u_1, u_2) = u_1(1, 0) + u_2(0, 1)$ , where  $u_1$  and  $u_2$  are scalars called co-ordinates or coefficients of  $u$  relative to  $B_1$ . We represent the vector  $u = (u_1, u_2)$  by placing the coordinates in the column matrix  $\begin{pmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \end{pmatrix}$  which is called the co-ordinate or coefficient matrix of  $u$  relative to the ordered basis  $B_1$  and is denoted by  $[u]_{B_1}$ . Hence

$$[u]_{B_1} = \begin{pmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.4)$$

It can be seen that the co-ordinate matrix of  $u = (u_1, u_2)$  in  $R^2$  relative to the ordered basis  $B_2 = \{(0, 1), (1, 0)\}$  is given by

$$[u]_{B_2} = \begin{pmatrix} u_2 \\ u_1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (1.5)$$

From 1.4 and 1.5, it is to be noted that co-ordinate matrix of a vector depends upon the choice of the ordered basis. In general, suppose  $V$  is a finite dimensional vector space over a field  $F$  and  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  be an ordered basis for  $V$ . Let  $\alpha \in V$ , then there is a unique  $n$ -tuple  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  of scalars such that  $\alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + x_2\alpha_2 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n$ . Then the co-ordinate matrix

of  $\alpha$  relative to the basis  $\mathcal{B}$  is  $[\alpha]_B = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix}$

**Example 17.** Consider  $R^3$  with standard basis  $(1, 0, 0)$ ,  $(0, 1, 0)$  and  $(0, 0, 1)$ . Then  $(3, 2, -1) = 3(1, 0, 0) + 2(0, 1, 0) - 1(0, 0, 1)$ . Then the coordinate matrix

of the vector  $(3, 2, -1)$  relative to the standard ordered basis is given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

**Theorem 1.7.** *Let  $V$  be an  $n$ -dimensional vector space over the field  $F$ , and let  $\mathcal{B}$  and  $\mathcal{B}'$  be two ordered basis of  $V$ . Then there is a unique, necessarily invertible,  $n \times n$  matrix  $P$  with entries in  $F$  such that*

$$[\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}} = P[\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}'} \quad (1.6)$$

$$[\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}'} = P^{-1}[\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}} \quad (1.7)$$

for every vector  $\alpha \in V$ . The columns of  $P$  are given by  $P_j = [\alpha'_j]_{\mathcal{B}}$ ,  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .

*Proof.* Suppose that  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  and  $\mathcal{B}' = \{\alpha'_1, \alpha'_2, \dots, \alpha'_n\}$  are two ordered bases for  $V$ . Then there are unique scalars  $P_{ij}$  such that  $\alpha'_j = P_{1,j}\alpha_1 + P_{2,j}\alpha_2 + \dots + P_{n,j}\alpha_n$

Let  $x'_1, x'_2, \dots, x'_n$  be the coordinates of a given vector  $\alpha$  in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}'$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha &= x'_1\alpha'_1 + x'_2\alpha'_2 + \dots + x'_n\alpha'_n \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^n x'_j\alpha'_j \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^n x'_j \sum_{i=1}^n P_{ij}\alpha_i \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^n \sum_{i=1}^n (P_{ij}x'_j)\alpha_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \sum_{j=1}^n P_{ij}x'_j \right) \alpha_i \end{aligned}$$

Thus we obtain the relation

$$\alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n \left( \sum_{j=1}^n P_{ij} x'_j \right) \alpha_i$$

Since the coordinates  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  of  $\alpha$  in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}$  are uniquely determined, it follows that

$$x_i = \sum_{j=1}^n P_{ij} x'_j, \quad 1 \leq i \leq n.$$

Let  $P$  be the  $n \times n$  matrix whose  $i, j$  entry is the scalar  $P_{ij}$ , and let  $X$  and  $X'$  be the coordinate matrices of the vector  $\alpha$  in the ordered bases  $\mathcal{B}$  and  $\mathcal{B}'$ . Then we get

$$X = PX'$$

Since  $\mathcal{B}$  and  $\mathcal{B}'$  are linearly independent sets,  $X = 0$  if and only if  $X' = 0$ .

This implies that  $P$  is invertible. Hence

$$X' = P^{-1}X.$$

Thus

$$[\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}} = P[\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}'}$$

$$[\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}'} = P^{-1}[\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}}.$$

□

**Example 18.** 1. Let  $F$  be a field and let  $\alpha = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  be a vector in  $F^n$ . If  $\mathcal{B}$  is the standard ordered basis of  $F^n$ ,  $\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, e_2, \dots, e_n\}$ , the co-ordinate matrix of the vector  $\alpha$  in the basis  $\mathcal{B}$  is given by  $[\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}} =$

$$\begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix}, \text{ since}$$

$$\alpha = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = x_1 e_1 + x_2 e_2 + \dots + x_n e_n.$$



2. Let  $R$  be the field of real numbers and let  $\theta$  be a fixed real matrix.

The matrix  $\begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$  is invertible with the inverse  $P^{-1} =$

$\begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$ . Thus for each  $\theta$  the set  $\mathcal{B}'$  consisting of the vec-

tors  $(\cos \theta, \sin \theta)$  and  $(-\sin \theta, \cos \theta)$  is a basis for  $R^2$ . If  $\alpha = (x_1, x_2)$ ,

then

$$[\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}'} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

3. Let  $F$  be a subfield of the complex numbers. The matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 & 4 & 5 \\ 0 & 2 & -3 \\ 0 & 0 & 8 \end{pmatrix}$$

is invertible with inverse

$$P^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 2 & \frac{11}{8} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{3}{16} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{8} \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus the column vectors of  $P$   $\mathcal{B}' = \{(-1, 0, 0), (4, 2, 0), (5, -3, 8)\}$  form

a basis of  $F^3$ . The coordinates  $x'_1, x'_2, x'_3$  of the vector  $\alpha = (x_1, x_2, x_3)$  in

the basis  $\mathcal{B}'$  are given by  $\begin{pmatrix} x'_1 \\ x'_2 \\ x'_3 \end{pmatrix} = P^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -x_1 + 2x_2 + \frac{11}{8}x_3 \\ \frac{1}{2}x_2 + \frac{3}{16}x_3 \\ \frac{1}{8}x_3 \end{pmatrix}$ .

4. If  $\mathcal{B}$  is the standard basis for  $R^3$  and  $\mathcal{B}' = \{(1, 1, 0), (1, 0, 1), (0, 1, 1)\}$

be another ordered basis for  $R^3$ , then find  $P$  such that  $[\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}} = P[\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}'}$ .

Solution

We have

$$\mathcal{B} = \{(1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 1)\} = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3\}$$

and

$$\mathcal{B}' = \{(1, 1, 0), (1, 0, 1), (0, 1, 1)\} = \{\alpha'_1, \alpha'_2, \alpha'_3\}$$

We can write

$$\alpha'_1 = (1, 1, 0) = 1(1, 0, 0) + 1(0, 1, 0) + 0(0, 0, 1) = 1.\alpha_1 + 1.\alpha_2 + 0.\alpha_3$$

$$\alpha'_2 = (1, 0, 1) = 1(1, 0, 0) + 0(0, 1, 0) + 1(0, 0, 1) = 1.\alpha_1 + 0.\alpha_2 + 1.\alpha_3$$

$$\alpha'_3 = (0, 1, 1) = 0(1, 0, 0) + 1(0, 1, 0) + 1(0, 0, 1) = 0.\alpha_1 + 1.\alpha_2 + 1.\alpha_3$$

and this implies that

$$P_{11} = 1, P_{12} = 1, P_{13} = 0$$

$$P_{21} = 1, P_{22} = 0, P_{23} = 1$$

$$P_{31} = 0, P_{32} = 1, P_{33} = 1$$

Hence

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Here the rows of  $P$  are elements of  $\mathcal{B}'$  itself because  $\mathcal{B}$  is the standard basis.

### Exercises

1. Show that the vectors  $\alpha_1 = (1, 1, 0, 0)$ ,  $\alpha_2 = (0, 0, 1, 1)$ ,  $\alpha_3 = (1, 0, 0, 4)$ ,  $\alpha_4 = (0, 0, 0, 2)$  form a basis for  $R^4$ . Find the coordinates of each of the standard basis vectors in the ordered basis  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3, \alpha_4\}$ .
2. Find the coordinate matrix of the vector  $(1, 0, 1)$  in the basis of  $C^3$  consisting of the vectors  $(2i, 1, 0)$ ,  $(2, -1, 1)$ ,  $(0, 1+i, 1-i)$  in that order.
3. Let  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3\}$  be an ordered basis for  $R^3$  consisting of

$$\alpha_1 = (1, 0, -1), \alpha_2 = (1, 1, 1), \alpha_3 = (1, 0, 0)$$

What are the coordinates of the vector  $(a, b, c)$  in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}$ ?

# Chapter 2

## Linear Transformations

### 2.1 Linear Transformations

In this section we study linear functions from a vector space into another.

**Definition 2.1.** *Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces over the field  $F$ . A linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$  is a function  $T$  from  $V$  into  $W$  such that*

$$T(c\alpha + \beta) = c(T(\alpha)) + T(\beta)$$

*for all  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  in  $V$  and all scalars  $c \in F$ .*

**Example 19.** 1. If  $V$  is any vector space, the identity transformation  $I$  defined by  $I(\alpha) = \alpha$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $V$ . The zero transformation  $0$ , defined by  $0.\alpha = 0$ , is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $V$ .

2. Let  $F$  be a field and let  $V$  be the space of polynomial functions  $f$  from  $F$  into  $F$ , given by

$$f(x) = c_0 + c_1x + \dots + c_kx^k.$$

Let

$$Df(x) = c_1 + 2c_2x + \dots + kc_kx^{k-1}.$$

Let  $f, g \in V$  and  $c \in F$ . Take  $f(x) = c_0 + c_1x + \dots + c_kx^k$  and  $g(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_kx^k$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} D(cf + g)(x) &= D[(cc_0 + a_0) + (cc_1 + a_1)x + (cc_2 + a_2)x^2 + \dots + (cc_k + a_k)x^k] \\ &= (cc_1 + a_1) + 2(cc_2 + a_2)x + \dots + k(cc_k + a_k)x^{k-1} \\ &= cc_1 + 2cc_2x + \dots + kcc_kx^{k-1} + a_1 + 2a_2x + \dots + ka_kx^{k-1} \\ &= c(c_1 + 2c_2x + \dots + kc_kx^{k-1}) + a_1 + 2a_2x + \dots + ka_kx^{k-1} \\ &= c.D(f(x)) + D(g(x)) = cDf + Dg. \end{aligned}$$

That is  $D$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $V$ - the differentiation transformation.

3. Let  $A$  be a fixed  $m \times n$  matrix with entries in the field  $F$ . The function  $T$  defined by  $T(X) = AX$  is a linear transformation from  $F^{n \times 1}$  into  $F^{m \times 1}$ . The function  $U$  defined by  $U(\alpha) = \alpha A$  is a linear transformation from  $F^m$  into  $F^n$ .
4. Let  $R$  be the field of real numbers and let  $V$  be the space of all functions from  $R$  into  $R$  which are continuous. Define  $T$  by  $(Tf)(x) = \int_0^x f(t)dt$ . Then for  $f, g \in V$  and  $c \in F$ , we have  $T(cf + g)(x) = \int_0^x (cf + g)(t)dt = \int_0^x cf(t)dt + \int_0^x g(t)dt = c \cdot \int_0^x f(t)dt + \int_0^x g(t)dt = c.Tf(x) + Tg(x) = (c.Tf + Tg)(x)$ . That is  $T$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $V$ .

**Remark 4.** 1. If  $T$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ , then  $T(0) = 0$ .

*Proof.* Suppose  $T$  is a linear transformation. Then  $T(0) = T(0 + 0) = T(0) + T(0) \Rightarrow T(0) - T(0) = T(0) + T(0) - T(0) \Rightarrow T(0) = 0$ .  $\square$

2. Linear transformation preserves linear combinations. That is if  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  are vectors in a vector space  $V$  and  $c_1, \dots, c_n$  are scalars, then

$$T(c_1\alpha_1 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n) = c_1T(\alpha_1) + \dots + c_nT(\alpha_n).$$

**Theorem 2.1.** *Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space over the field  $F$  and let  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  be an ordered basis for  $V$ . Let  $W$  be a vector space over the same field and let  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n$  be any vectors in  $W$ . Then there is precisely one linear transformation  $T$  from  $V$  into  $W$  such that  $T(\alpha_j) = \beta_j$ ,  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .*

*Proof.* To prove there is some linear transformation  $T$  with  $T(\alpha_j) = \beta_j$ , we proceed as follows. Given  $\alpha \in V$ , there is a unique  $n$ -tuple  $(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  such that

$$\alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n,$$

since  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  is an ordered basis for  $V$ . For this vector  $\alpha$ , we define

$$T(\alpha) = x_1\beta_1 + \dots + x_n\beta_n.$$

Then  $T$  is a well defined rule (Since  $x_i \in F$  and  $\beta_i \in W \Rightarrow x_i\beta_i \in W$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n \Rightarrow T(\alpha) = x_1\beta_1 + \dots + x_n\beta_n \in W$ .) Now  $T(\alpha_j) = \beta_j$  for each  $j$ , since  $\alpha_j = 0.\alpha_1 + 0.\alpha_2 + \dots + 1.\alpha_j + \dots + 0.\alpha_n$ .

To prove that  $T$  is a linear transformation, let  $\beta = y_1\alpha_1 + \dots + y_n\alpha_n \in V$  and let  $c$  be any scalar. Then to prove that  $T(c\alpha + \beta) = c.T(\alpha) + T(\beta)$ . We can write  $c\alpha + \beta = c(x_1\alpha_1 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n) + y_1\alpha_1 + \dots + y_n\alpha_n = (cx_1 + y_1)\alpha_1 + \dots + (cx_n + y_n)\alpha_n$ . Then

$$T(c\alpha + \beta) = (cx_1 + y_1)\beta_1 + \dots + (cx_n + y_n)\beta_n \quad (2.1)$$

On the other hand  $c(T\alpha) + T\beta = c(x_1\beta_1 + \dots + x_n\beta_n) + y_1\beta_1 + \dots + y_n\beta_n =$

$(cx_1 + y_1)\beta_1 + \dots + (cx_n + y_n)\beta_n$ . That is

$$c(T\alpha) + T\beta = (cx_1 + y_1)\beta_1 + \dots + (cx_n + y_n)\beta_n \quad (2.2)$$

From equation 2.1 and 2.2, we get  $T$  is a linear transformation.

Next we have to prove that  $T$  is unique. Assume that  $U$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$  with  $U(\alpha_j) = \beta_j$ ,  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Then for a vector  $\alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} U(\alpha) &= U(x_1\alpha_1 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n) \\ &= x_1U(\alpha_1) + \dots + x_nU(\alpha_n) \\ &= x_1\beta_1 + \dots + x_n\beta_n. \end{aligned}$$

This means that  $U$  is exactly the same rule  $T$  which we defined above. This shows that the linear transformation  $T$  with  $T(\alpha_j) = \beta_j$  is unique.  $\square$

**Example 20.** 1. The vectors

$$\alpha_1 = (1, 2)$$

$$\alpha_2 = (3, 4)$$

are linearly independent and therefore form a basis for  $R^2$ . According to Theorem 2.1, there is a unique linear transformation from  $R^2$  into  $R^3$  such that

$$T(\alpha_1) = (3, 2, 1)$$

$$T(\alpha_2) = (6, 5, 4).$$

If so we must be able to find  $T(1, 0)$ . For that write  $(1, 0)$  as a linear combination of  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$ . And then apply  $T$ . That is if  $(1, 0) = a(1, 2) + b(3, 4)$ ,  $a + 3b = 1$  and  $2a + 4b = 0$ . That is  $a + 2b = 0 \Rightarrow a =$

$-2b$ . Then  $b = 1 \Rightarrow a = -2$ . Thus  $(1, 0) = -2(1, 2) + (3, 4)$ . Thus By the method in Theorem 2.1, we get

$$\begin{aligned} T(1, 0) &= T(-2(1, 2) + (3, 4)) \\ &= -2T(1, 2) + T(3, 4) \\ &= -2(3, 2, 1) + (6, 5, 4) \\ &= (0, 1, 2). \end{aligned}$$

2. Let  $T$  be a linear transformation from the  $m$ -tuple space  $F^m$  into the space  $n$ -tuple space  $F^n$ . Theorem 2.1, tells us that  $T$  is uniquely determined by the sequence of vectors  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m$  where  $\beta_i = Te_i$ ,  $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ . In short  $T$  is uniquely determined by the images of the standard basis vectors. That is  $\alpha = (x_1, \dots, x_m) = x_1e_1 + \dots + x_me_m$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} T(\alpha) &= T(x_1e_1 + \dots + x_me_m) \\ &= x_1T(e_1) + x_2T(e_2) + \dots + x_mT(e_m) \\ &= x_1\beta_1 + x_2\beta_2 + \dots + x_m\beta_m. \end{aligned}$$

If  $B$  is the  $m \times n$  matrix which has row vectors  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m$ . If  $\beta_i = (B_{i1}, \dots, B_{in})$ , then  $T(x_1, \dots, x_m) = [x_1 \cdots x_m] = \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} & \cdots & B_{1n} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ B_{m1} & \cdots & B_{mn} \end{pmatrix}$

### 2.1.1 Rank Nullity Theorem

**Definition 2.2.** Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces over the field  $F$  and let  $T$  be a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ . The null space of  $T$  is the set of all vectors  $\alpha \in V$  such that  $T(\alpha) = 0$ .

*If  $V$  is finite dimensional, then the rank of  $T$  is the dimension of the range of  $T$  and the nullity of  $T$  is the dimension of the null space of  $T$ .*

**Remark 5.** Let  $V$  and  $W$  be two vector spaces over the field  $F$  and let  $T$  be a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ . Then null space is a subspace of  $V$ . For, let  $c \in F$ ,  $\alpha, \beta \in N$ , then  $T(c\alpha + \beta) = c.T(\alpha) + T(\beta) = 0 \Rightarrow c\alpha + \beta \in N$ .

The following is one of the most important results in linear algebra.

**Theorem 2.2.** *Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces over the field  $F$  and let  $T$  be a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ . Suppose that  $V$  is finite dimensional. Then*

$$\text{rank}(T) + \text{nullity}(T) = \dim V.$$

*Proof.* We know that  $N$ , the null space of  $T$ , is a subspace of  $V$ . Since  $V$  is finite dimensional, its subspace  $N$  is also finite dimensional and has a basis consisting of finite number of elements. Let  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k\}$  be a basis for the null space  $N$  of  $T$ . There are vectors  $\alpha_{k+1}, \dots, \alpha_n$  in  $V$  such that  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k, \alpha_{k+1}, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  is a basis for  $V$ .

Claim:  $\{T\alpha_{k+1}, \dots, T\alpha_n\}$  is a basis for the range of  $T$ .

(i)  $T\alpha_{k+1}, \dots, T\alpha_n$  spans range of  $T$ .

Clearly the vectors  $\{T\alpha_{k+1}, \dots, T\alpha_n\}$  spans the range of  $T$ . Since  $T(\alpha_j) = 0$  for  $j \leq k$ , we see that  $T\alpha_{k+1}, \dots, T\alpha_n$  span the range. To see that these vectors are independent, suppose we have scalars  $c_i$  such that  $c_{k+1}T(\alpha_{k+1}) + \dots + c_nT(\alpha_n) = 0$ . This says that

$$T(c_{k+1}\alpha_{k+1} + \dots + c_n\alpha_n) = 0.$$

and accordingly the vector  $\alpha = c_{k+1}\alpha_{k+1} + \dots + c_n\alpha_n$  is in the null space of  $T$ . Since  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k$  forms a basis of  $N$ , there must be scalars  $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_k$  such that  $\alpha = b_1\alpha_1 + \dots + b_k\alpha_k$ . Thus  $b_1\alpha_1 + \dots + b_k\alpha_k - (c_{k+1}\alpha_{k+1} + \dots + c_n\alpha_n) = 0$



and since  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  are linearly independent we must have  $b_1 = \dots = b_k = c_{k+1} = \dots = c_n = 0$ . If  $r$  is the rank of  $T$ , the fact that  $\{T(\alpha_{k+1}), \dots, T(\alpha_n)\}$  forms a basis for the range of  $T$  tells us that  $r = n - k$ . Here  $k$  is the nullity of  $T$  and  $n$  is the dimension of  $V$ . Thus we get  $\text{rank}(T) + \text{nullity}(T) = \dim V$ .  $\square$

**Example 21.** Find the rank and nullity of the linear transformation  $T : R^3 \rightarrow R^3$  defined by  $T(x_1, x_2, x_3) = (x_1 + x_3, 2x_1 + x_2, x_1 + 2x_3)$ .

Solution

We have from the definition of  $T$ ,  $T(1, 0, 0) = (1, 2, 1)$ ,  $T(0, 1, 0) = (0, 1, 0)$  and  $T(0, 0, 1) = (1, 0, 2)$ . Thus

$$A = [T]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

By performing elementary transformations, we can see that  $\text{Rank } A = 3$ . Hence  $\text{Rank of } T$  is 3 and  $\text{Nullity of } T = \dim V - \text{rank } T = 3 - 3 = 0$ .

**Example 22.** Does there exist a linear operator  $T$  on a vector space  $V$  having dimension 7 such that the dimension of the range space and the null space are the same.

Solution

Suppose there exists such a closure operator. By rank-nullity theorem, we have  $\text{rank } T + \text{nullity } T = \dim V$ . the dimension of the range space and the null space are the same, then we obtain,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Rank } T + \text{Nullity } T &= \dim V \\ \Rightarrow \text{Rank } T + \text{Rank } T &= 7 \\ \Rightarrow 2 \text{ Rank } T &= 7 \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{Rank} T = 3.5.$$

which is not possible as the dimension of the range space (in general dimension of any finite dimensional vector space) must be an integer. So There does not exists a linear operator with rank 7.

**Theorem 2.3.** *If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix with entries in the field  $F$ , then  $\text{row rank}(A) = \text{column rank}(A)$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $T$  be a linear transformation from  $F^{n \times 1}$  into  $F^{m \times 1}$  defined by  $T(X) = AX$ . The null space of  $T$  is the solution space for the system  $AX = 0$ , that is the set of all column matrices  $X$  such that  $AX = 0$ . The range of  $T$  is the set of all  $m \times 1$  column matrices  $Y$  such that  $AX = Y$  has a solution for  $X$ . If  $A_1, \dots, A_n$  are the columns of  $A$ , then

$$AX = x_1 A_1 + \dots + x_n A_n.$$

so that range of  $T$  is the subspace of spanned by the columns of  $A$ . In other words, the range of  $T$  is the column space of  $A$ . Therefore  $\text{rank}(T) = \text{columnrank}(A)$ . Previous Theorem(Rank Nullity Theorem) tells us that if  $S$  the solution space of the system  $AX = 0$ , then

$$\dim S + \text{column rank}(A) = n. \quad (2.3)$$

If  $r$  is the dimension of the row space of  $A$ , then the solution space  $S$  has a basis consisting of  $n - r$  vectors:

$$\dim S = n - \text{row rank}(A). \quad (2.4)$$

Thus from equations 2.3 and 2.4, we get

$$\text{row rank}(A) = \text{column rank}(A).$$

□

### 2.1.2 Algebra of Linear Transformations

**Theorem 2.4.** *Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces over the field  $F$ . Let  $T$  and  $U$  be linear transformations from  $V$  into  $W$ . The function  $(T + U)$  defined by  $(T + U)(\alpha) = T(\alpha) + U(\alpha)$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ . If  $c$  is any elements of  $F$ , the function  $cT$  defined by  $(cT)(\alpha) = c(T(\alpha))$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ . The set of all linear transformations from  $V$  into  $W$ , together with the addition and scalar multiplication defined above, is a vector space over the field  $F$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose  $T$  and  $U$  are linear transformations from  $V$  in to  $W$  and that we define as above. Then

$$\begin{aligned}(T + U)(c\alpha + \beta) &= T(c\alpha + \beta) + U(c\alpha + \beta) \\ &= c(T\alpha) + T\beta + c(U\alpha) + U\beta \\ &= c(T\alpha + U\alpha) + T\beta + U\beta \\ &= c(T + U)(\alpha) + (T + U)(\beta).\end{aligned}$$

which shows that  $(T + U)$  is a linear transformation. Similarly

$$\begin{aligned}(cT)(d\alpha + \beta) &= cT(d\alpha + \beta) \\ &= c[dT(\alpha) + T(\beta)] \\ &= cdT(\alpha) + c(T\beta) \\ &= d[cT\alpha] + cT\beta \\ &= d[(cT)(\alpha)] + (cT)\beta\end{aligned}$$

which shows that  $cT$  is a linear transformation. Thus we have sum of two linear transformations and scalar multiple of a linear transformation are linear. Now one can prove conditions on the vector addition and scalar multiplication. □

Denote the space of linear transformations from  $V$  into  $W$  by  $L(V, W)$ . Note that  $L(V, W)$  is defined only when  $V$  and  $W$  are vector spaces over the same field.

**Theorem 2.5.** *Let  $V$  be an  $n$ -dimensional vector space over the field  $F$ , and let  $W$  be an  $m$ -dimensional vector space over  $F$ . Then the space  $L(V, W)$  is finite dimensional and has dimension  $mn$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  and  $\mathcal{B}' = \{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m\}$  be ordered bases for  $V$  and  $W$  respectively. For each pair of integers  $(p, q)$  with  $1 \leq p \leq m$  and  $1 \leq q \leq n$ , we define a linear transformation  $E^{p,q}$  from  $V$  into  $W$  by

$$E^{p,q}(\alpha_i) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } i \neq q \\ \beta_p, & \text{if } i = q \end{cases} = \delta_{iq}\beta_p$$

By Theorem 2.1, we have a unique linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$  satisfying these conditions. The claim is that the  $mn$  transformations  $E^{p,q}$  form a basis for  $L(V, W)$ .

Let  $T$  be a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ . For each  $j$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq n$ , let  $A_{1j}, \dots, A_{mj}$  be the coordinates of the vector  $T\alpha_j$  in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}'$ , i.e.,

$$T(\alpha_j) = \sum_{p=1}^m A_{pj}\beta_p. \quad (2.5)$$

We want to show that

$$T = \sum_{p=1}^m \sum_{q=1}^n A_{pq} E^{p,q} \quad (2.6)$$

Let  $U$  be the linear transformation in the right hand member of 2.6. Then for each  $j$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
U\alpha_j &= \sum_p \sum_q A_{pq} E^{p,q}(\alpha_j) \\
&= \sum_p \sum_q A_{pq} \delta_{jq} \beta_p \\
&= \sum_{p=1}^m A_{pj} \beta_p \\
&= T\alpha_j
\end{aligned}$$

and consequently  $U = T$ . Now by equation 2.6, we get  $E^{p,q}$  span  $L(V, W)$ . Next we prove that  $E^{p,q}$  are independent. If  $\sum_{p=1}^m \sum_{q=1}^n A_{pq} E^{p,q} = 0$ , then  $U\alpha_j = 0$ , for each  $j$ , so  $\sum_{p=1}^m A_{pj} \beta_p = 0$  and the independence of the  $\beta_p$  implies that  $A_{pj} = 0$  for every  $p$  and  $j$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 2.6.** *Let  $V$ ,  $W$ , and  $Z$  be vector spaces over the field  $F$ . Let  $T$  be a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$  and  $U$  a linear transformation from  $W$  into  $Z$ . Then the composed function  $UT$  defined by  $UT(\alpha) = U(T(\alpha))$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $Z$ .*

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned}
UT(c\alpha + \beta) &= U(T(c\alpha + \beta)) \\
&= U(cT\alpha + T\beta) \\
&= c(U(T\alpha)) + U(T\beta) \\
&= c(UT)(\alpha) + (UT)(\beta)
\end{aligned}$$

$\square$

Note that a linear transformation from a vector space  $V$  to itself is called a linear operator on  $V$ .

**Definition 2.3.** If  $V$  is a vector space over the field  $F$ , a linear operator on  $V$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $V$ .

**Lemma 2.1.** Let  $V$  be a vector space over the field  $F$ , let  $U$ ,  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  be linear operator on  $V$ , let  $c$  be an element of  $F$ .

1.  $IU = UI = U$

2.  $U(T_1 + T_2) = UT_1 + UT_2$ ;  $(T_1 + T_2)U = T_1U + T_2U$

3.  $c(UT_1) = (cU)T_1 = U(cT_1)$ .

*Proof.* 1.  $IU(\alpha) = I(U(\alpha)) = U(\alpha)$ . Similarly  $UI(\alpha) = U(I(\alpha)) = U(\alpha)$ .

Thus  $IU = UI = U$ .

2.

$$\begin{aligned} U(T_1 + T_2)(\alpha) &= U((T_1 + T_2)(\alpha)) \\ &= U(T_1(\alpha) + T_2(\alpha)) \\ &= U(T_1(\alpha)) + U(T_2(\alpha)) \\ &= (UT_1)(\alpha) + (UT_2)(\alpha). \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} [(T_1 + T_2)U](\alpha) &= (T_1 + T_2)(U(\alpha)) \\ &= T_1(U(\alpha)) + T_2(U(\alpha)) \\ &= (T_1U)(\alpha) + (T_2U)(\alpha). \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $(T_1 + T_2)U = T_1U + T_2U$ .

3.  $c(UT_1)(\alpha) = c(U(T_1(\alpha))) = (cU)(T_1(\alpha)) = (cU)(T_1)(\alpha)$ .

□

**Remark 6.** The vector space  $L(V, V)$  together with the composition operation, is known as Linear algebra with identity.

**Example 23.**

If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix with entries in  $F$ , we have the linear transformation  $T$  defined by  $T(X) = AX$  from  $F^{n \times 1}$  into  $F^{m \times 1}$ . If  $B$  is a  $p \times m$  matrix, we have the linear transformation  $U$  from  $F^{m \times 1}$  into  $F^{p \times 1}$  defined by  $U(Y) = BY$ . The composition  $UT$  is easily described:

$$(UT)(X) = U(T(X)) = U(AX) = B(AX) = (BA)X. \quad (2.7)$$

Thus  $UT$  is left multiplication by the product matrix  $BA$ .

Let  $F$  be a field and  $V$  the vector space of all polynomial functions from  $F$  into  $F$ . Let  $D$  be the differentiation operator defined by Example 2. Let  $T$  be the linear operator multiplication by  $x$ :

$$(Tf)(x) = xf(x).$$

Then  $DT \neq TD$ . For, take  $f(x) = a + bx + cx^2$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} DT(f)(x) &= D(T(a + bx + cx^2)) \\ &= D(x(a + bx + cx^2)) \\ &= D(ax + bx^2 + cx^3) \\ &= a + 2bx + 3cx^2. \end{aligned}$$

But

$$\begin{aligned} (TD)f(x) &= T(D(a + bx + cx^2)) \\ &= T(b + 2cx) \\ &= x(b + 2cx) \\ &= bx + 2cx^2 \\ &\neq DT(f(x)). \end{aligned}$$

**Exercises**

1. Which of the following functions  $T$  from  $R^2$  to  $R^2$  are linear transformations?
  - (a)  $T(x_1, x_2) = (1 + x_1, x_2)$
  - (b)  $T(x_1, x_2) = (x_2, x_1)$
  - (c)  $T(x_1, x_2) = (x_1^2, x_2)$
  - (d)  $T(x_1, x_2) = (\sin x_1, x_2)$
  - (e)  $T(x_1, x_2) = (x_1 - x_2, 0)$
2. Find the range, rank, null space, and nullity for the zero transformation and the identity transformation of a finite dimensional space  $V$ .
3. Describe the range and null space for the differentiation transformation on a finite dimensional space  $V$ .
4. Is there a linear transformation  $T$  from  $R^3$  to  $R^2$  such that  $T(1, -1, 1) = (1, 0)$  and  $T(1, 1, 1) = (0, 1)$ ?

## 2.2 Invertible Linear Operators

Next we are going to discuss which linear operators  $T$  on the space  $V$  does there exist a linear operator  $T^{-1}$  such that  $TT^{-1} = T^{-1}T = I$ ?

**Definition 2.4.** A function  $T : V \rightarrow W$  is called invertible if there exists a function  $U$  from  $W$  into  $V$  such that  $UT$  is the identity function on  $V$  and  $TU$  is the identity function on  $W$ . If  $T$  is invertible, the function  $U$  is unique and is denoted by  $T^{-1}$ .

$T$  is invertible if and only if

1.  $T$  is one-one ( $T\alpha = T\beta \Rightarrow \alpha = \beta$ ;) )
2.  $T$  is onto (Range of  $T = W$ .)

**Theorem 2.7.** Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces over the field  $F$  and let  $T$  be a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ . If  $T$  is invertible, then the inverse function  $T^{-1}$  is a linear transformation from  $W$  onto  $V$ .



*Proof.* Assume that  $T$  is invertible. Then there exists an inverse function  $T^{-1}$  from  $W$  onto  $V$  such that  $T^{-1}T$  is the identity function on  $V$  and  $TT^{-1}$  is the identity function on  $W$ . To prove that  $T^{-1}$  is linear.

Let  $\beta_1, \beta_2 \in W$  and let  $c$  be a scalar.  $\beta_1, \beta_2 \in W$  and  $T$  is onto implies that there exists  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2 \in V$  such that  $T(\alpha_1) = \beta_1$  and  $T(\alpha_2) = \beta_2$ . Since  $T$  is linear,  $T(c\alpha_1 + \alpha_2) = cT(\alpha_1) + T(\alpha_2) = c\beta_1 + \beta_2$  which implies that  $T^{-1}(c\beta_1 + \beta_2) = c\alpha_1 + \alpha_2$ . Now  $T(\alpha_1) = \beta_1$  and  $T(\alpha_2) = \beta_2$  implies that  $T^{-1}(\beta_1) = \alpha_1$  and  $T^{-1}(\beta_2) = \alpha_2$  respectively. Thus we get

$$T^{-1}(c\beta_1 + \beta_2) = cT^{-1}(\beta_1) + T^{-1}(\beta_2).$$

Thus  $T^{-1}$  is linear. □

**Example 24.** Find the inverse of the linear operator  $T$  on 3 defined by  $T(x_1, x_2, x_3) = (3x_1, x_2 - x_1, 2x_1 + x_2 - x_3)$ .

Solution

$T(x_1, x_2, x_3) = (y_1, y_2, y_3)$ . Then

$$3x_1 = y_1, \tag{2.8}$$

$$x_2 - x_1 = y_2, \tag{2.9}$$

$$2x_1 + x_2 - x_3 = y_3 \tag{2.10}$$

Now from equation(2.8), we get

$$x_1 = \frac{y_1}{3}.$$

And from equation(2.9),

$$x_2 = y_2 + x_1 = y_2 + \left(\frac{y_1}{3}\right).$$

Finally from equation (2.10),

$$x_3 = y_3 - 2x_1 - x_2 = y_3 - 2\left(\frac{y_1}{3}\right) - \left(y_2 + \left(\frac{y_1}{3}\right)\right) = y_3 - y_2 - y_1.$$

$$T^{-1}(y_1, y_2, y_3) = \left(\frac{y_1}{3}, y_2 + \left(\frac{y_1}{3}\right), y_3 - y_2 - y_1\right).$$

**Remark 7.**

Suppose we have an invertible linear transformation  $T$  from  $V$  onto  $W$  and an invertible linear transformation  $U$  from  $W$  onto  $Z$ . Then  $UT$  is invertible and  $(UT)^{-1} = T^{-1}U^{-1}$ .

If  $T$  is linear, then  $T(\alpha - \beta) = T\alpha - T\beta$ . This implies that  $T\alpha = T\beta$  if and only if  $T(\alpha - \beta) = 0$ .

**Definition 2.5.** A linear transformation  $T$  is called non-singular if  $T(\alpha) = 0$  implies that  $\alpha = 0$ . That is if null space of  $T$  is  $\{0\}$ .

Note that  $T$  is one-one if and only if  $T$  is non-singular.

**Theorem 2.8.** Let  $T$  be a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ . Then  $T$  is non-singular if and only if  $T$  carries each linearly independent subset of  $V$  onto a linearly independent subset of  $W$ .

*Proof.* First assume that  $T$  is non-singular. Let  $S$  be a linearly independent subset of  $V$ . If  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k$  are vectors in  $S$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} c_1T(\alpha_1) + \dots + c_kT(\alpha_k) = 0 &\Rightarrow T(c_1\alpha_1 + \dots + c_k\alpha_k) = 0. \\ &\Rightarrow c_1\alpha_1 + \dots + c_k\alpha_k = 0, \end{aligned}$$

since  $T$  is non-singular. Then each  $c_i = 0$ , since  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k$  are linearly independent vectors. Thus  $T\alpha_1, \dots, T\alpha_k$  are linearly independent. This means that  $T$  carries linearly independent set into a linearly independent set.

Conversely assume that  $T$  carries linearly independent set into a linearly independent set. To prove that  $T$  is non-singular. Let  $\alpha$  be a non zero vector in  $V$ . Then the set  $S$  consisting of one vector  $\alpha$  is independent. The image of  $S$  is the set consisting of one vector  $T\alpha$  is independent by our assumption.

Hence  $T\alpha \neq 0$  (since a set consisting of the zero vector alone is dependent). This shows that the null space of  $T$  is the zero subspace. That is  $T$  is non-singular.  $\square$

**Example 25.** Let  $F$  be a field and let  $T$  be the linear operator on  $F^2$  defined by  $T(x_1, x_2) = (x_1 + x_2, x_1)$ . Then  $T(x_1, x_2) = 0 \Rightarrow (x_1 + x_2, x_1) = (0, 0) \Rightarrow x_1 = 0$  and  $x_2 = 0$ . That means  $T$  is non-singular. Thus  $T$  is one-one. Now we prove that  $T$  is onto. Let  $z_1, z_2 \in F$  such that

$$x_1 + x_2 = z_1$$

and

$$x_1 = z_2$$

and solution is  $x_1 = z_2$  and  $x_2 = z_1 - z_2$ . Both values of  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  lies in  $F$ . Means that  $T$  is onto. Thus  $T$  is invertible and its inverse is given by  $T^{-1}(z_1, z_2) = (z_2, z_1 - z_2)$ .

**Theorem 2.9.** *Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite dimensional vector spaces over the field  $F$  such that  $\dim V = \dim W$ . If  $T$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ , the following are equivalent:*

1.  $T$  is invertible.
2.  $T$  is non-singular
3.  $T$  is onto, that is Range of  $T$  is  $W$ .

*Proof.* Let  $n = \dim V = \dim W$ . From Rank nullity Theorem,  $\text{rank } T + \text{nullity } T = \dim V = n$ . Now  $T$  is non-singular if and only if  $\text{nullity } (T) = 0$ , then  $\text{rank } T = n$ , that is if and only if Range of  $T$  is  $W$ . Thus  $T$  is non-singular if and only if  $T$  is onto. So if either condition (ii) or (iii) holds, the other is satisfied as well and  $T$  is invertible.  $\square$

**Theorem 2.10.** *Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite dimensional vector spaces over the field  $F$  such that  $\dim V = \dim W$ . If  $T$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ , the following are equivalent:*

1.  $T$  is invertible.
2.  $T$  is non-singular
3.  $T$  is onto, that is Range of  $T$  is  $W$ .
4. If  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  is a basis for  $V$ , then  $\{T\alpha_1, \dots, T\alpha_n\}$  is a basis for  $W$ .
5. There is some basis  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  for  $V$  such that  $\{T\alpha_1, \dots, T\alpha_n\}$  is a basis for  $W$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii)

If  $T$  is invertible, then  $T$  is non-singular.

(ii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iii)

Suppose  $T$  is non-singular. If  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  is a basis for  $V$ , they are linearly independent vectors. Since  $T$  is non-singular, it maps linearly independent set to linearly independent set. Now dimension of  $W$  is  $n$ , this set of vectors is a basis of  $W$ . Now let  $\beta \in W$ . There exists scalars  $c_1, \dots, c_n$  such that

$$\beta = c_1 T\alpha_1 + \dots + c_n T\alpha_n = T(c_1\alpha_1 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n)$$

Here  $c_1\alpha_1 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n \in V$ . Thus  $\beta$  belongs to the range of  $T$ . Means that  $T$  is onto.

(iii)  $\Rightarrow$  (iv)

Assume  $T$  is onto. If  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ , is any basis for  $V$ , the vectors  $\{T\alpha_1, \dots, T\alpha_n\}$  span the range of  $T$ , which is all of  $W$  by assumption. Since the dimension of  $W$  is  $n$ , these  $n$  vectors must be linearly independent, that is must comprise a basis a basis for  $W$ . (iv) clearly implies (v). (v) implies (i). Suppose there

is some basis  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  for  $V$  such that  $\{T\alpha_1, \dots, T\alpha_n\}$  is a basis for  $W$ . To prove that  $T$  is one-one and onto. Since  $\{T\alpha_1, \dots, T\alpha_n\}$  span  $W$  and  $\dim W = n$ , it is clear that the range of  $T$  is all of  $W$ . Means that  $T$  is onto. If  $\alpha = c_1\alpha_1 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n$  is in the null space of  $T$ , then

$$T(c_1\alpha_1 + \dots + c_n\alpha_n) = 0$$

or

$$c_1(T\alpha_1) + \dots + c_n(T\alpha_n) = 0$$

and since  $\{T\alpha_1, \dots, T\alpha_n\}$  is a basis, it is linearly independent. Therefore each  $c_i = 0$  and thus  $\alpha = 0$ . Means that  $T$  is non-singular or one-one. Thus  $T$  is invertible.  $\square$

### Exercises

1. Let  $T$  be a unique linear operator on  $C^3$  for which  $T(e_1) = (1, 0, i)$ ,  $T(e_2) = (0, 1, 1)$ ,  $T(e_3) = (i, 1, 0)$ . Is  $T$  invertible?
2. Let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $R^3$  defined by  $T(x_1, x_2, x_3) = (3x_1, x_1 - x_2, 2x_1 + x_2 + x_3)$ . Is  $T$  invertible? If so, find a rule for  $T^{-1}$  like one which define  $T$ .
3. Find two linear operators  $T$  and  $U$  on  $R^2$  such that  $TU = 0$  but  $UT \neq 0$ .

## 2.3 Isomorphism

**Definition 2.6.** If  $V$  and  $W$  are vector spaces over the field  $F$ , any one-one linear transformation  $T$  of  $V$  onto  $W$  is called an isomorphism of  $V$  onto  $W$ . If there exists an isomorphism of  $V$  onto  $W$ , we say that  $V$  is isomorphic to  $W$ .

**Theorem 2.11.** Every  $n$ -dimensional vector space over the field  $F$  is isomorphic to the space  $F^n$ .

*Proof.* Let  $V$  be an  $n$ -dimensional space over the field  $F$  and let  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  be an ordered basis for  $V$ . We define a function from  $V$  into  $F^n$  as follows: If  $\alpha \in V$ , let  $T\alpha$  be the  $n$ -tuple  $(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  of coordinates of  $\alpha$  relative to the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}$ . Then we have verified that  $T$  is linear, one-one, and maps  $V$  onto  $F^n$ .  $\square$

### Exercises

1. Let  $V$  be the set of complex numbers and let  $F$  be the field of real numbers. With the usual operations,  $V$  is a vector space over  $F$ . Describe explicitly an isomorphism of this space onto  $R^2$ .
2. Show that  $F^{m \times n}$  is isomorphic to  $F^{mn}$ .
3. Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite dimensional vector spaces over the field  $F$ . Prove that  $V$  and  $W$  are isomorphic if and only if  $\dim V = \dim W$ .

## 2.4 Representation of Transformations by matrices

Let  $V$  be an  $n$ -dimensional vector space over the field  $F$  and let  $W$  be an  $m$ -dimensional vector space over  $F$ . Let  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  be an ordered basis for  $V$  and  $\mathcal{B}' = \{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m\}$  be an ordered basis for  $W$ . If  $T$  is any linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ , then  $T$  is determined by its action on the vectors  $\alpha_j$ . Each of the  $n$  vectors  $T(\alpha_j)$  is uniquely expressible as a linear combination

$$T(\alpha_j) = \sum_{i=1}^m A_{ij} \beta_i. \quad (2.11)$$

of the  $\beta_i$ , the scalars  $A_{1j}, \dots, A_{mj}$  being the coordinates of the  $T(\alpha_j)$  in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}'$ . Accordingly, the transformation  $T$  is determined by  $mn$  scalars  $A_{ij}$  via the formula 2.11. The  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  defined by  $A(i, j) = A_{ij}$  is called the matrix of  $T$  relative to the pair of ordered bases  $\mathcal{B}$  and  $\mathcal{B}'$ . Let's look at how the matrix  $A$  determines the linear transformation  $T$ .

Consider a vector  $\alpha \in V$ , then we can find scalars  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  such that  $\alpha = x_1 \alpha_1 + \dots + x_n \alpha_n$ . Then

$$T(\alpha) = T(x_1 \alpha_1 + \dots + x_n \alpha_n)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= x_1 T(\alpha_1) + \dots x_n T(\alpha_n) \\
&= x_1 (A_{11}\beta_1 + \dots + A_{1m}\beta_m) + \dots + x_n (A_{n1}\beta_1 + \dots + A_{nm}\beta_m) \\
&= x_1 \sum_{i=1}^m A_{1i}\beta_i + \dots + x_n \sum_{i=1}^m A_{ni}\beta_i \\
&= \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \sum_{i=1}^m A_{ij}\beta_i \\
&= \sum_{i=1}^m \left( \sum_{j=1}^n A_{ij}x_j \right) \beta_i
\end{aligned}$$

Here the scalar  $\sum_{j=1}^n A_{ij}x_j$ , is the entry in the  $i^{\text{th}}$  row of the column matrix  $AX$ . Thus  $AX$  is the coordinate matrix of the vector  $T(\alpha)$  in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}'$ , if  $X$  is the coordinate matrix of  $\alpha$  in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}$ .

Also note that if  $A$  is any  $m \times n$  matrix over the field  $F$ , then

$$T\left(\sum_{j=1}^n x_j \alpha_j\right) = \sum_{i=1}^m \left( \sum_{j=1}^n A_{ij}x_j \right) \beta_i \quad (2.12)$$

defines a linear transformation  $T$  from  $V$  into  $W$ .

**Theorem 2.12.** *Let  $V$  be an  $n$ -dimensional vector space over the field  $F$  and  $W$  be an  $m$ -dimensional vector space over  $F$ . Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be an ordered basis for  $V$  and  $\mathcal{B}'$  an ordered basis for  $W$ . For each linear transformation  $T$  from  $V$  into  $W$ , there is an  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  with entries in  $F$  such that*

$$[T\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}'} = A[\alpha]_{\mathcal{B}}$$

*for every vector  $\alpha \in V$ . Furthermore, the map  $T \rightarrow A$  is a one-one correspondence between the set of all linear transformations from  $V$  into  $W$  and the set of all  $m \times n$  matrices over the field  $F$ .*

Note that the matrix  $A$  in the above theorem is known as matrix of  $T$  relative to the ordered bases  $\mathcal{B}$  and  $\mathcal{B}'$ . Columns  $A_1, \dots, A_n$  of the matrix  $A$  is given by

$$A_j = [T\alpha_j]_{\mathcal{B}'} \quad j = 1, \dots, n.$$

**Note 2.2.** If  $U$  is another linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$  and  $B = [B_1, \dots, B_n]$  is the matrix of  $U$  relative to the ordered bases  $\mathcal{B}$  and  $\mathcal{B}'$ .

$$\begin{aligned} cA_j + B_j &= c[T\alpha_j]_{\mathcal{B}'} + [U\alpha_j]_{\mathcal{B}'} \\ &= [T\alpha_j + U\alpha_j]_{\mathcal{B}'} \\ &= [(cT + U)\alpha_j]_{\mathcal{B}'} \end{aligned}$$

then  $cA + B$  is the matrix of  $cT + U$  relative to  $\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}'$ .

**Theorem 2.13.** *Let  $V$  be an  $n$ -dimensional vector space over the field  $F$  and let  $W$  be an  $m$ -dimensional vector space over  $F$ . For each pair of ordered bases  $\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}'$  for  $V$  and  $W$  respectively, the function which assigns to a linear transformation  $T$  its matrix relative to  $\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}'$  is an isomorphism between the space  $L(V, W)$  and the space of all  $m \times n$  matrices over the field  $F$ .*

*Proof.* Consider the function  $f$  which assigns to a linear transformation  $T$  its matrix relative to  $\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}'$ . Then  $f$  is a function from the space  $L(V, W)$  to the space of all  $m \times n$  matrices over the field  $F$ . We have from note 2.2,  $f$  is linear. Also by Theorem 2.12,  $f$  is a one-one correspondence. And corresponding to an  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$ , there is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$  defined by Equation 2.12. Hence  $f$  is onto. Thus  $f$  is an isomorphism.  $\square$

**Note 2.3.** Consider representation by matrices of linear transformations from the space into itself, that is linear operators on a space  $V$ . Here we use the same ordered basis in each case, that is to take  $\mathcal{B} = \mathcal{B}'$ . We can call the representing matrix as the matrix of  $T$  relative to the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}$ .

**Example 26.** 1. Let  $F$  be a field and let  $T$  be the operator on  $F^2$  defined by  $T(x_1, x_2) = (x_2, x_1)$ . We are going to find the matrix representing  $T$  relative to the standard ordered basis  $\mathcal{B} = \{e_1, e_2\}$ , where  $e_1 = (1, 0)$



and  $e_2 = (0, 1)$ . Here we have both bases are same. So find images of  $e_1, e_2$  under  $T$  and represent those images in terms of  $e_1$  and  $e_2$ .

$$T(e_1) = T(1, 0) = (0, 1) = 0.e_1 + 1.e_2.$$

$$T(e_2) = T(0, 1) = (1, 0) = 1.e_1 + 0.e_2.$$

So the columns of the matrix of  $T$  are  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$  and  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$  and the matrix of  $T$  in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}$  is given by,

$$[T]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

2. Let  $V$  be the space of  $n \times 1$  column matrices over the field  $F$ . Let  $W$  be the space of  $m \times 1$  matrices over  $F$ , and let  $A$  be a fixed  $m \times n$  matrix over  $F$ . Let  $T$  be the linear transformation of  $V$  into  $W$  defined by  $T(X) = AX$ .
3. Let  $V$  be the space of all polynomial functions from  $R$  into  $R$  of the form  $f(x) = c_0 + c_1x + c_2x^2 + c_3x^3$ . That is the space of all polynomial functions of degree three or less. The differentiation operator  $D$  that maps  $V$  into  $V$ , since  $D$  is degree decreasing. Let  $\mathcal{B} = \{f_1, f_2, f_3, f_4\}$ , where  $f_1(x) = 1$  for all  $x$ .  
 $f_2(x) = x$  for all  $x$ .  
 $f_3(x) = x^2$  for all  $x$ .  
 $f_4(x) = x^3$  for all  $x$ .

Then

$$Df_1(x) = 0 = 0f_1 + 0f_2 + 0f_3 + 0f_4$$

$$Df_2(x) = 1 = 1f_1 + 0f_2 + 0f_3 + 0f_4$$

$$Df_3(x) = 2x = 0f_1 + 2f_2 + 0f_3 + 0f_4$$

$$Df_4(x) = 3x^2 = 0f_1 + 0f_2 + 3f_3 + 0f_4.$$

So the columns of matrix are given by  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ ,  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ ,  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ ,  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 3 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ , and thus

matrix of  $D$  is given by  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ .

**Theorem 2.14.** *Let  $V$ ,  $W$  and  $Z$  be finite dimensional vector spaces over the field  $F$ , let  $T$  be a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$  and  $U$  be a linear transformation from  $W$  into  $Z$ . If  $\mathcal{B}$ ,  $\mathcal{B}'$  and  $\mathcal{B}''$  are ordered bases for the spaces  $V$ ,  $W$  and  $Z$  respectively, if  $A$  is the matrix of  $T$  relative to the pair  $\mathcal{B}$ ,  $\mathcal{B}'$  and  $B$  is the matrix of  $U$  relative to the pair  $\mathcal{B}'$ ,  $\mathcal{B}''$ , then the matrix of the composition  $UT$  relative to the pair  $\mathcal{B}$ ,  $\mathcal{B}''$  is the product matrix  $C = BA$ .*

**Definition 2.7.** *Let  $A$  and  $B$  be  $n \times n$  matrices over the field  $F$ . We say that  $B$  is similar to  $A$  if there is an invertible  $n \times n$  matrix  $P$  over  $F$  such that  $B = P^{-1}AP$ .*

In the next theorem we are saying that if  $V$  is an  $n$ -dimensional vector space over  $F$  and  $\mathcal{B}$ ,  $\mathcal{B}'$  are two ordered bases for  $V$ , then for each linear operator  $T$  on  $V$  the matrix  $[T]_{\mathcal{B}'}$  is similar to  $[T]_{\mathcal{B}}$ .

**Theorem 2.15.** *Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space over the field  $F$ , and let  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  and  $\mathcal{B}' = \{\alpha'_1, \dots, \alpha'_n\}$  be ordered base for  $V$ .*

Suppose  $T$  is a linear operator on  $V$ . If  $P = [P_1, \dots, P_n]$  is the  $n \times n$  matrix with columns  $P_j = [\alpha'_j]_{\mathcal{B}}$ , then  $[T]_{\mathcal{B}'} = P^{-1}[T]_{\mathcal{B}}P$ .

If  $U$  is the invertible operator on  $V$  defined by  $U(\alpha_j) = \alpha'_j$ ,  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , then  $[T]_{\mathcal{B}'} = [U]_{\beta}^{-1}[T]_{\mathcal{B}}[U]_{\beta}$ .

**Example 27.** Let  $T$  be the linear operator on  $R^2$  defined by  $T(x_1, x_2) = (x_1, 0)$ . Then what is the matrix of  $T$  with respect to the standard basis  $\{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$ ?

We have  $T(x_1, x_2) = (x_1, 0)$  implies that

$$T(1, 0) = (1, 0) = 1 \cdot (1, 0) + 0 \cdot (0, 1) \text{ and}$$

$$T(0, 1) = (0, 0) = 0 \cdot (1, 0) + 0 \cdot (0, 1).$$

Thus we get matrix of  $T$  relative to the standard basis as  $[T]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ .

Suppose  $\mathcal{B}'$  is the ordered basis for  $R^2$  consisting of the vectors  $e'_1 = (1, 1)$ ,  $e'_2 = (2, 1)$ .

Then we have  $(1, 1) = 1 \cdot (1, 0) + 1 \cdot (0, 1) = e_1 + e_2$

and  $(2, 1) = 2 \cdot (1, 0) + 1 \cdot (0, 1) = 2e_1 + e_2$ .

Now  $P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

Then we can easily write  $P^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ .

By above Theorem we can find matrix of  $T$  relative to the basis consisting of  $e'_1 = (1, 1)$ ,  $e'_2 = (2, 1)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} [T]_{\mathcal{B}'} &= P^{-1}[T]_{\mathcal{B}}P \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -2 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

## 2.5 Linear functionals

**Definition 2.8.** If  $V$  is a vector space over the field  $F$ , a linear transformation  $f$  from  $V$  into the scalar field  $F$  is called a linear functional on  $V$ .

**Example 28.** 1. Consider vector space  $R^2$  over  $R$ .

Then the map defined by  $T(x_1, x_2) = x_1 + x_2$  is a linear functional.

2. Consider vector space  $F^n$  over  $F$ .

Then the map defined by  $f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = c_1x_1 + c_2x_2 + \dots + c_nx_n$  is a linear functional on  $F^n$ .

Now consider the standard basis of  $F^n$ . We can find the corresponding matrix of  $f$  relative to this basis.

We have  $f(1, 0, \dots, 0) = c_1$

$f(0, 1, \dots, 0) = c_2$

.

.

.

$f(0, 0, \dots, 1) = c_n$ .

That is  $f(e_i) = c_i, i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .

Thus  $\begin{bmatrix} c_1 & c_2 & \dots & c_n \end{bmatrix}$  is the matrix of  $f$  relative to the standard ordered basis for  $F^n$  and the basis  $\{1\}$  for  $F$ .

We have

$$(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = x_1e_1 + x_2e_2 + \dots + x_ne_n$$

$$f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = f(x_1e_1 + x_2e_2 + \dots + x_ne_n)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= x_1 f(e_1) + x_2 f(e_2) + \dots + x_n f(e_n) \\
&= x_1 c_1 + x_2 c_2 + \dots + x_n c_n
\end{aligned}$$

Thus every linear functional on  $F^n$  is of the form  $f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = c_1 x_1 + c_2 x_2 + \dots + c_n x_n$ .

3. Let  $n$  be a positive integer and  $F$  a field. If  $A$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix with entries in  $F$ , the trace of  $A$  is the sum of the diagonal entries. Thus Trace of  $A = tr A = A_{11} + A_{22} + \dots + A_{nn}$ . For example

$$tr \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 6 & 3 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 5 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = 1 + 2 + 2 = 5$$

We can easily verify that  $tr$  is a linear functional.

$$\begin{aligned}
tr(cA + B) &= cA_{11} + B_{11} + cA_{22} + B_{22} + \dots + cA_{nn} + B_{nn} \\
&= cA_{11} + cA_{22} + \dots + cA_{nn} + B_{11} + B_{22} + \dots + B_{nn} \\
&= c(A_{11} + A_{22} + \dots + A_{nn}) + B_{11} + B_{22} + \dots + B_{nn} \\
&= c.tr A + tr B
\end{aligned}$$

4. Let  $V$  be the space of all polynomial functions from the field  $F$  into itself. Let  $t$  be an element of  $F$ . If we define  $L_t(p) = p(t)$ , then  $L_t$  is a linear functional on  $V$ . For example, let  $p$  denotes the polynomial  $p(x) = 1 + 2x + x^3$  and  $t = 2$ , then  $L_t(p) = p(t) = 1 + 2 \cdot 2 + 2^3 = 13$ .
5. Let  $[a, b]$  be a closed interval on the real line and let  $C[a, b]$  be the space of continuous real valued functions on  $[a, b]$ . We have  $\int_a^b g(t)dt$  is a real number. Then

$$L(g) = \int_a^b g(t)dt$$

is a linear functional on  $C[a, b]$ .

$$L(cg+h) = \int_a^b (cg+h)(t)dt = \int_a^b (cg(t))dt + \int_a^b (h(t))dt = cL(g) + L(h)$$

Thus  $L$  is a linear functional on  $C[a, b]$ .

## Dual Space

**Definition 2.9.** If  $V$  is a vector space, the collection of all linear functionals on  $V$  forms a vector space and is the space  $L(V, F)$ . It is denoted by  $V^*$  and call it the dual space of  $V$ . Thus  $L(V, F) = V^*$

Dual Space:  $L(V, F) = V^*$

If  $V$  is finite dimensional,  $\dim V^* = \dim V$ .

### Dual basis

Let  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  be a basis for  $V$ . Then there is a unique linear functional  $f_i$  on  $V$  such that  $f_i(\alpha_j) = \delta_{ij}$ , where  $\delta_{ij} = 1$ , if  $i = j$  and 0 if  $i \neq j$ . Thus from the basis  $\mathcal{B}$ , we get a set of  $n$  distinct linear functionals  $\{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$  on  $V$ . We can prove that

$$\mathcal{B}' = \{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$$

is a basis for  $V^*$  and is called dual basis of  $\mathcal{B}$ .

For this suppose

$$c_1 f_1 + \dots + c_n f_n = 0,$$

then

$$(c_1 f_1 + \dots + c_n f_n)(\alpha_j) = 0(\alpha_j) = 0, \text{ for } j = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

we have

$$f_j(\alpha_j) = 1 \text{ and } f_i(\alpha_j) = 0 \text{ for } i \neq j,$$

therefore from equation 2.5, we get  $c_j = 0, j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Thus  $\{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$  is linearly independent. Since we know that  $V^*$  has dimension  $n$ ,  $\{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$  is a basis for  $V^*$ . This basis is called the dual basis of  $\mathcal{B}$ .

Dual Basis:  
 $\mathcal{B}' = \{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$   
 where  $f_i(\alpha_j) = \delta_{ij}$ ,  
 $\delta_{ij} = 1$ , if  $i = j$  and 0 if  $i \neq j$ .

**Theorem 2.16.** *Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space over the field  $F$  and let  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  be a basis for  $V$ . Then there is a unique dual basis  $\mathcal{B}^* = \{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$  in  $V^*$  such that  $f_i(\alpha_j) = \delta_{ij}$ . For each linear functional  $f$  on  $V$  we have*

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^n f(\alpha_i) f_i$$

and

$$\alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n f_i(\alpha) \alpha_i.$$

*Proof.* We already proved that  $\mathcal{B}'$  is basis for  $V^*$ . Now if

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^n c_i f_i,$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} f(\alpha_j) &= \sum_{i=1}^n c_i f_i(\alpha_j) \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^n c_i \delta_{ij} \\ &= c_j \end{aligned}$$

That is  $c_j = f(\alpha_j)$ . Hence

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^n f(\alpha_i) f_i \tag{2.13}$$

Next we have to prove that this representation is unique. For that take a vector in  $V$

$$\alpha = x_1 \alpha_1 + \dots + x_n \alpha_n = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \alpha_i.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} f_j(\alpha) &= f_j(x_1 \alpha_1 + \dots + x_n \alpha_n) \\ &= x_1 f_j(\alpha_1) + \dots + x_n f_j(\alpha_n) \end{aligned}$$

$$= x_j$$

That is

$$x_j = f_j(\alpha)$$

Thus the unique representation of  $\alpha$  is given by

$$\alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n f_i(\alpha) \alpha_i. \quad (2.14)$$

□

**Example 29.** 1. Let  $V$  be the vector space of all polynomial functions from  $R$  into  $R$  which have degree less than or equal to 2. Let  $t_1, t_2$ , and  $t_3$  be any three distinct real numbers and let  $L_i(p) = p(t_i)$ . Then  $L_1, L_2$  and  $L_3$  are functionals on  $V$ . Suppose  $c_1 L_1 + c_2 L_2 + c_3 L_3 = L$ . Consider particular functions  $1, x, x^2$ ,

$$L_1(1) = 1$$

$$L_2(1) = 1$$

$$L_3(1) = 1$$

$$L_1(x) = p(t_1) = t_1$$

$$L_2(x) = p(t_2) = t_2$$

$$L_3(x) = p(t_3) = t_3$$

$$L_1(x^2) = p(t_1) = t_1^2$$

$$L_2(x^2) = p(t_2) = t_2^2$$

$$L_3(x^2) = p(t_3) = t_3^2$$

$$L(1) = c_1 L_1(1) + c_2 L_2(1) + c_3 L_3(1) = c_1 \cdot 1 + c_2 \cdot 1 + c_3 \cdot 1$$

$$L(x) = (c_1 L_1 + c_2 L_2 + c_3 L_3)(x) = c_1 L_1(x) + c_2 L_2(x) + c_3 L_3(x) = c_1 t_1 + c_2 t_2 + c_3 t_3$$

$$L(x^2) = (c_1 L_1 + c_2 L_2 + c_3 L_3)(x^2) = c_1 L_1(x^2) + c_2 L_2(x^2) + c_3 L_3(x^2) = c_1 t_1^2 + c_2 t_2^2 + c_3 t_3^2$$



If  $L = 0$ , ie if  $L(p) = 0$  for each  $p \in V$ , then applying  $L$  to the particular functions  $1, x, x^2$  we get,

$$c_1 + c_2 + c_3 = 0$$

$$c_1 t_1 + c_2 t_2 + c_3 t_3 = 0$$

$$c_1 t_1^2 + c_2 t_2^2 + c_3 t_3^2 = 0$$

The corresponding coefficient matrix  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ t_1 & t_2 & t_3 \\ t_1^2 & t_2^2 & t_3^2 \end{bmatrix}$  is invertible when  $t_1, t_2$  and  $t_3$  are distinct. This implies that  $c_1 = c_2 = c_3 = 0$ . This implies that three functionals are linearly independent. Now the  $L_i$  are independent, and since  $V$  has dimension 3, these 3 functionals  $\{L_1, L_2, L_3\}$  form a basis for  $V^*$ .

Dual basis of this basis will be of the form  $\{p_1, p_2, p_3\}$  [ Dual basis is a subset of  $V = \text{set of all polynomials}$ ].  $\{p_1, p_2, p_3\}$  will satisfy

$L_i(p_j) = \delta_{ij}$  by the previous theorem

$$\Rightarrow p_j(t_i) = \delta_{ij}, \text{ by the definition of } L_i, \quad p_1(x) = \frac{(x-t_2)(x-t_3)}{(t_1-t_2)(t_1-t_3)}$$

$$p_2(x) = \frac{(x-t_1)(x-t_3)}{(t_2-t_1)(t_2-t_3)}$$

$$p_3(x) = \frac{(x-t_1)(x-t_2)}{(t_3-t_1)(t_3-t_2)}$$

**Remark 8.** If  $f$  is a non-zero linear functional, then the rank of  $f$  is 1 because the range of  $f$  is a non zero subspace of the scalar field and must be the scalar field. If the underlying space  $V$  is finite dimensional, the rank-nullity theorem tells us that the null space has dimension  $\dim N_f = \dim V - 1$

**Note 2.4.** In a vector space of dimension  $n$ , a subspace of dimension  $n - 1$  is called a hyperspace. The null space of a functional is always a hyperspace.

**Definition 2.10.** If  $V$  is a vector space over the field  $F$  and  $S$  is a subset of  $V$ , the annihilator of  $S$  is the set  $S^0$  of linear functionals  $f$  on  $V$  such that  $f(\alpha) = 0$  for every  $\alpha \in S$ .

**Note 2.5.**  $S^0$  is a subspace of  $V^*$ . If  $S = \{0\}$ , the zero subspace, then  $S^0 = V^*$ . If  $S = V^*$ , then  $S^0 = \{0\}$ , the zero subspace.

**Theorem 2.17.** Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space over the field  $F$ , and let  $W$  be a subspace of  $V$ . Then  $\dim W + \dim W^0 = \dim V$ .

*Proof.* Let  $k$  be the dimension of  $W$  and  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k\}$  be a basis of  $W$ . Let  $\{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$  be a basis for  $V^*$  which is dual to this basis for  $W$ .

Claim:  $\{f_{k+1}, \dots, f_n\}$  is a basis for the annihilator  $W^0$ .

$f_i(\alpha_j) = \delta_{ij}$ , by the property of dual basis.

$\delta_{k+1, k-1} = 0$  and  $\delta_{ij} = 0$  if  $i \geq k+1$  and  $j \leq k$ .

Suppose  $\alpha = c_1\alpha_1 + c_2\alpha_2 + \dots + c_{n-k}\alpha_n$ .

Then for  $i \geq k+1$ ,  $f_i(\alpha) = c_1f_i(\alpha_1) + c_2f_i(\alpha_2) + \dots + c_nf_i(\alpha_n) = 0$ .

This means that  $f_{k+1}, f_{k+2}, \dots, f_n$  belongs to  $W^0$ . The functionals  $f_{k+1}, f_{k+2}, \dots, f_n$  are linearly independent since  $\{f_1, \dots, f_n\}$  is a basis of  $V^*$ .

Now we have to show that  $f_{k+1}, f_{k+2}, \dots, f_n$  span  $W^0$ . Let  $f \in W^0$ . We have to express  $f$  as a linear combination of  $f_{k+1}, f_{k+2}, \dots, f_n$ .

Since  $W^0$  is a subset of  $V^*$ ,  $f \in W^0$  implies that  $f \in V^*$ . Then we know that  $f$  is a linear combination of  $f_1, f_2, \dots, f_n$  (Since it is basis for  $V^*$ ). That is

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^n f(\alpha_i) f_i.$$

Now  $f \in W^0$  implies that  $f(\alpha_i) = 0$  for  $i \leq k$  and thus

$$f = \sum_{i=k+1}^n f(\alpha_i) f_i.$$

This means that  $f$  can be written as a linear combination of  $f_{k+1}, f_{k+2}, \dots, f_n$ .

Thus we get  $\{f_{k+1}, f_{k+2}, \dots, f_n\}$  is a basis for  $W^0$ .

Thus if  $\dim V = n$  and  $\dim W = k$ , then  $\dim W^0 = n - k$ . In other words,  $\dim W + \dim W^0 = \dim V$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 2.1.** *If  $W$  is a  $k$ -dimensional subspace of an  $n - k$  dimensional vector space  $V$ , then  $W$  is the intersection of  $n - k$  hyper spaces in  $V$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $W$  be a  $k$ -dimensional subspace of an  $n$  dimensional vector space  $V$ , then from the proof of the Theorem 2.17, it follows that  $W$  is exactly the set of vectors such that  $f_i(\alpha) = 0$ , for  $i = k + 1, \dots, n$ . That is

$$W = \{\alpha / f_i(\alpha) = 0, \text{ for all } i = k + 1, \dots, n\}.$$

That is

$$W = \bigcap_{i=k+1}^n N_{f_i}.$$

where  $N_{f_i}$  is the null space of  $f_i$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha \in W &\Rightarrow \alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + \dots + x_k\alpha_k \text{ where } \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k\} \text{ is a basis for } W. \\ &\Rightarrow \alpha = x_1f_i(\alpha_1) + \dots + x_kf_i(\alpha_k) \\ &\Rightarrow = 0 \text{ for all } i \geq k + 1 \text{ since } f_{k+1}, \dots, f_n \in W^0. \\ &\Rightarrow \alpha \in N_{f_i} \text{ for all } i \geq k + 1 \\ &\Rightarrow \alpha \in \bigcap_{i=k+1}^n N_{f_i}. \end{aligned}$$

$$W \subseteq \bigcap_{i=k+1}^n N_{f_i} \quad (2.15)$$

Conversely

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha \in \bigcap_{i=k+1}^n N_{f_i} &\Rightarrow \alpha \in N_{f_i} \text{ for all } i \geq k + 1 \\ &\Rightarrow f_i(\alpha) = 0 \text{ for all } i = k + 1, \dots, n \end{aligned}$$

We have

$$\alpha = \sum_{i=1}^n f_i(\alpha)\alpha_i \text{ by above theorem}$$

Then  $\alpha = \sum_{i=1}^k f_i(\alpha)\alpha_i$  since  $f_i(\alpha) = 0$  for all  $i = k+1, \dots, n$ . Which implies  $\alpha \in W$ . Thus

$$\bigcap_{i=k+1}^n N_{f_i} \subseteq W \quad (2.16)$$

Thus by the Equation 2.15 and 2.16, we get  $W = \bigcap_{i=k+1}^n N_{f_i}$ . Since each  $f_i$  is a non-zero linear functional on  $V$ , the null space  $N_{f_i}$  is a hyperspace in  $V$ . Thus  $W$  is the intersection of  $n - k$  hyper spaces in  $V$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 2.2.** *If  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are subspaces of a finite- dimensional vector space, then  $W_1 = W_2$  if and only if  $W_1^0 = W_2^0$ .*

*Proof.* If  $W_1 = W_2$ , then obviously  $W_1^0 = W_2^0$ . If  $W_1 \neq W_2$ , then one of the two subspaces contains a vector which is not in the other. Suppose  $\alpha \in W_2$  but not in  $W_1$ . Then there is a linear functional  $f$  such that  $f(\beta) = 0$  for all  $\beta \in W_1$ , but  $f(\alpha) \neq 0$ . Then  $f \in W_1^0$ , but not in  $W_2^0$ . Therefore  $W_1^0 \neq W_2^0$ . Thus  $W_1^0 = W_2^0$  implies that  $W_1 = W_2$ .  $\square$

**Note 2.6.** A system of homogeneous linear equations from the point of view of linear functionals. Suppose we want to find solutions of the following system of linear equations,

$$\begin{aligned} A_{11}x_1 + \dots + A_{1n}x_n &= 0 \\ &\vdots \\ A_{m1}x_1 + \dots + A_{mn}x_n &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

if we let  $f_i, i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ , be the linear functional on  $F^n$  defined by

$$f_i(x_1, \dots, x_n) = A_{i1}x_1 + \dots + A_{in}x_n$$

then we are seeking the subspace of  $F^n$  of all  $\alpha$  such that  $f_i(\alpha) = 0$ ,  $i = 1, \dots, m$ . In other words we are seeking the subspace annihilated by

$f_1, \dots, f_m$ . Row reduction of the coefficient matrix provides us with a systematic method of finding this subspace. The  $n$ -tuple  $(A_{i1}, \dots, A_{in})$  gives the coordinates of the linear functional  $f_i$  relative to the basis which is dual to the standard basis for  $F^n$ . The row space of the coefficient matrix may thus be regarded as the space of linear functionals spanned by  $f_1, \dots, f_m$ . The solution space is the subspace annihilated by this space of functionals.

Now look at the system of equations from the ‘dual’ point of view. suppose that we are given  $m$  vectors in  $F^n$ .  $\alpha_i = (A_{i1}, \dots, A_{in})$  and we wish to find the annihilator of the subspace spanned by these vectors. Since a typical linear functional on  $F^n$  has the form  $f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = c_1x_1 + \dots + c_nx_n$  the condition that  $f$  be in this annihilator is that  $\sum_{j=1}^n A_{ij}c_j = 0, i = 1, 2, \dots, m$  that is, that  $(c_1, \dots, c_n)$  be solution of the system  $AX = 0$ . From this point of view, row-reduction gives us a systematic method of finding the annihilator of the subspace spanned by a given finite set of vectors in  $F^n$ .

**Example 30.** 1. Let  $\alpha_1 = (1, 0, -1, 2)$ ,  $\alpha_2 = (2, 3, 1, 1)$  and let  $W$  be the subspace of  $R^4$  spanned by  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$ . Which linear functionals are in the annihilator of  $W$ ? Find a basis for  $W$ .

Solution

$$\text{Let } A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 & 3 & -3 \end{bmatrix} \sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

we have  $W$  is the row space of  $A$ . Thus the vectors

$$\beta_1 = (1, 0, -1, 2)$$

and

$$\beta_2 = (0, 1, 1, -1)$$

form a basis for  $W$ . Thus

$$\dim W = 2,$$

So

$$\dim W^0 = 4 - 2 = 2.$$

A linear functional on  $R^4$  is of the form

$$f(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = c_1x_1 + c_2x_2 + c_3x_3 + c_4x_4 \quad (2.17)$$

$f \in W^0 \Leftrightarrow f(\alpha) = 0$  for every  $\alpha \in W$ . Then  $f(\beta_1) = 0$  and  $f(\beta_2) = 0$ .

Now

$$f(\beta_1) = 0 \Rightarrow f(1, 0, -1, 2) = 0$$

and

$$f(\beta_2) = 0 \Rightarrow f(0, 1, 1, -1) = 0.$$

Thus  $c_1 - c_3 + 2c_4 = 0$  and  $c_2 + c_3 - c_4 = 0$ . Now put  $c_3 = a$  and  $c_4 = b$ .

Then we get

$$c_1 = a - b$$

and

$$c_2 = b - a.$$

Now substitute  $c_1, c_2, c_3$  and  $c_4$  in Equation 2.17, then we get  $W^0$  is the set of all linear functionals  $f$  of the form  $(a-b)x_1 + (b-a)x_2 + ax_3 + bx_4$ , where  $a, b \in R$ .

2. Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ .

Prove that

$$(W_1 + W_2)^0 = W_1^0 + W_2^0$$

*Proof.*

$$W_1 \subseteq W_1 + W_2 \Rightarrow (W_1 + W_2)^0 \subseteq W_1^0$$

$$W_2 \subseteq W_1 + W_2 \Rightarrow (W_1 + W_2)^0 \subseteq W_2^0$$

. Thus

$$(W_1 + W_2)^0 \subseteq W_1^0 \cap W_2^0. \quad (2.18)$$

To prove the reverse inclusion, let  $f \in W_1^0 \cap W_2^0$ . Then  $f \in W_1^0$  and  $f \in W_2^0$ . Now

$$f \in W_1^0 \Rightarrow f(\alpha) = 0 \text{ for every } \alpha \in W_1$$

and

$$f \in W_2^0 \Rightarrow f(\beta) = 0 \text{ for every } \beta \in W_2.$$

Then  $f(\alpha) + f(\beta) = 0$  for every  $\alpha \in W_1$  and  $\beta \in W_2$ . Then  $f(\alpha + \beta) = 0$  for every  $\alpha \in W_1$  and  $\beta \in W_2$ . This means that  $f \in W_1^0 + W_2^0$ . Thus

$$W_1^0 \cap W_2^0 \subseteq W_1^0 + W_2^0 \quad (2.19)$$

From equations 2.18 and 2.19, we get

$$(W_1 + W_2)^0 = W_1^0 + W_2^0.$$

□

3. Find the subspace annihilated by three linear functionals  $f_1, f_2$  and  $f_3$  on  $R^4$  defined by

$$f_1(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = x_1 + 2x_2 + 2x_3 + x_4$$

$$f_2(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = 2x_2 + x_4$$

$$f_3(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = -2x_1 - 4x_3 + 3x_4.$$

This system of equations can be written as

$$\begin{bmatrix} f_1 \\ f_2 \\ f_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\ -2 & 0 & -4 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \end{bmatrix}$$

By the note already give above, to find the subspace which they annihilate can be found by finding the row reduced echelon form of the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\ -2 & 0 & -4 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

It can be deduced into

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus the linear functionals

$$g_1(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = x_1 + 2x_3$$

$$g_2(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = x_2$$

$g_3(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = x_4$  span the same subspace of  $(R^4)^*$  and annihilate the same subspace of  $R^4$  as do  $f_1, f_2, f_3$ . The subspace annihilated consists of the vectors with  $x_1 + 2x_3 = 0 \Rightarrow x_1 = -2x_3, x_2 = 0$  and  $x_4 = 0$ . Thus  $\{(-2x_3, 0, x_3, 0)/x_3 \in R\}$  is the required subspace.

Exercises

1. In  $R^3$ , let  $\alpha_1 = (1, 0, 1)$ ,  $\alpha_2 = (0, 1, -2)$ ,  $\alpha_3 = (-1, -1, 0)$ 
  - (a) If  $f$  is a linear functional on  $R^3$  such that  $f(\alpha_1) = 1$ ,  $f(\alpha_2) = -1$ ,  $f(\alpha_3) = 3$  and if  $\alpha = (a, b, c)$ , then find  $f(\alpha)$ .
  - (b) Describe explicitly a linear functional  $f$  on  $R^3$  such that  $f(\alpha_1) = f(\alpha_2) = 0$  but  $f(\alpha_3) \neq 0$ .
  - (c) Let  $f$  be any linear functional such that  $f(\alpha_1) = f(\alpha_2) = 0$  and  $f(\alpha_3) \neq 0$ . If  $\alpha = (2, 3, -1)$ , show that  $f(\alpha) \neq 0$ .
2. Let  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3\}$  be the basis for  $C^3$  defined by  $\alpha_1 = (1, 0, -1)$ ,  $\alpha_2 = (1, 1, 1)$ ,  $\alpha_3 = (2, 2, 0)$ . Find a dual basis of  $\mathcal{B}$ .
3. Let  $\alpha_1 = (1, 0, -1, 2)$  and  $\alpha_2 = (2, 3, 1, 1)$  and let  $W$  be the subspace of  $R^4$  spanned by  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$ . Which linear functionals  $f$  such that  $f(x_1, x_2, x_3, x_4) = c_1x_1 + c_2x_2 + c_3x_3 + c_4x_4$  are in the annihilator of  $W$ .



4. Let  $W$  be the subspace of  $R^5$  which is spanned by the vectors  
 $\alpha_1 = e_1 + 2e_2 + e_3$ ,  
 $\alpha_2 = e_2 + 3e_3 + 3e_4 + e_5$ ,  
 $\alpha_3 = e_1 + 4e_2 + 6e_3 + 4e_4 + e_5$ .  
 Find a basis for  $W^0$ .
5. Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be subspaces of a finite dimensional vector space  $V$ .  
 The prove that

$$(W_1 \cap W_2)^0 = W_1^0 + W_2^0.$$

## 2.6 Double Dual

If  $\alpha$  is a vector in  $V$ , then  $\alpha$  induces a linear functional  $L_\alpha$  on  $V^*$  defined by  $L_\alpha(f) = f(\alpha)$  for  $\alpha \in V$ .

**Note 2.7.** We can prove that  $L_\alpha$  is a linear transformation defined from  $V^*$  to  $F$ . Thus  $L_\alpha \in (V^*)^* = V^{**}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} L_\alpha(cf + g) &= (cf + g)(\alpha) \\ &= cf(\alpha) + g(\alpha) \text{ since } f \text{ linear} \\ &= c.L_\alpha f + L_\alpha g \end{aligned}$$

**Theorem 2.18.** Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space over the field  $F$ . For each vector  $\alpha \in V$ , define  $L_\alpha(f) = f(\alpha)$ ,  $f \in V^*$ . The mapping  $\alpha \rightarrow L_\alpha$  is then an isomorphism of  $V$  onto  $V^{**}$ .

*Proof.* We showed that for each  $\alpha$  the function  $L_\alpha$  is linear in Note 2.7. Suppose  $\alpha, \beta \in V$  and  $c \in F$ , and let  $\gamma = c\alpha + \beta$ . Then for each  $f \in V^*$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} L_\alpha(f) &= f(\gamma) \\ &= f(c\alpha + \beta) \\ &= c.f(\alpha) + f(\beta) \\ &= c.L_\alpha(f) + L_\beta(f) \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $L_\gamma = c.L_\alpha + L_\beta$ . Thus we get the map  $\alpha \rightarrow L_\alpha$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $V^{**}$ . This map is one to one since

$$\begin{aligned} L_\alpha = 0 &\Leftrightarrow L_\alpha(f) = 0 \text{ for every } f \in V^* \\ &\Leftrightarrow f(\alpha) = 0 \text{ for every } f \in V^* \\ &\Leftrightarrow \alpha = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Thus we get  $\alpha \rightarrow L_\alpha$  is a non-singular linear transformation from  $V$  into  $V^{**}$ , and since

$$\dim V^{**} = \dim V^* = \dim V$$

we get this transformation is invertible, and therefore is an isomorphism of  $V$  onto  $V^{**}$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 2.3.** *Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space over the field  $F$ . If  $L$  is a linear functional on the dual space  $V^*$  of  $V$ , then there is a unique vector  $\alpha \in V$  such that  $L(f) = f(\alpha)$  for every  $f \in V^*$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $L$  be a linear functional on the dual space  $V^*$  of  $V$ . Then  $L \in V^{**}$ . By the above theorem,  $\alpha \rightarrow L_\alpha$  is an isomorphism of  $V$  onto  $V^{**}$ . There is a unique vector  $\alpha \in V$  such that  $L_\alpha = L$ . Then for each  $f \in V^*$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} L(f) &= L_\alpha(f) \\ &= f(\alpha) \end{aligned}$$

Hence the result.  $\square$

**Corollary 2.4.** *Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space over the field  $F$ . Each basis for  $V^*$  is the dual basis of some basis for  $V$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $B^* = \{f_1, f_2, \dots, f_n\}$  be any basis for  $V^*$ . By theorem 2.16, there is a basis  $\{L_1, \dots, L_n\}$  for  $V^{**}$  such that  $L_i(f_j) = \delta_{ij}$ . By the above corollary,

for each  $i$ , there is a vector  $\alpha_i \in V$  such that  $L_i = L\alpha_i \Rightarrow L_i(f) = f(\alpha_i)$ , for all  $f \in V^*$ , that is such that  $L_i = L_{\alpha_i}$ . Thus  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  is a basis for  $V$  and that  $\mathcal{B}^*$  is the dual basis of this basis.  $\square$

**Remark 9.** 1. In theorem 2.18, we proved that  $\alpha \rightarrow L_\alpha$  is an isomorphism of  $V$  onto  $V^{**}$ . Therefore by identifying with  $\alpha$  we can assume that  $V^{**} = V$ . Thus the dual space of  $V^*$  is  $V$  and the dual space of  $V$  is  $V^*$ . That is each is the dual space of the other.

2. If  $E$  is a subset of  $V^*$ , then the annihilator  $E^0$  is technically a subspace of  $V^{**}$ . By identifying  $V^{**}$  with  $V$ , we can assume that  $E^0$  is a subspace of  $V$ . That is

$$\begin{aligned} E^0 &= \{L \in V^{**} / L(f) = 0, \text{ for all } f \in E\} \\ &= \{L_\alpha \in V^{**} / L_\alpha(f) = 0, \text{ for all } f \in E\} \\ &= \{\alpha \in V / f(\alpha) = 0, \text{ for all } f \in E\} \text{ (by identifying } \alpha \text{ with } L_\alpha) \end{aligned}$$

**Theorem 2.19.** *If  $S$  is any subset of a finite dimensional vector space  $V$ , then  $(S^0)^0$  is the subspace spanned by  $S$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $W$  be the subspace spanned by  $S$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} f \in S^0 &\Rightarrow f(\alpha) = 0 \text{ for all } \alpha \in S \\ &\Rightarrow f(\alpha) = 0 \text{ for all } \alpha \in W \text{ (Since } W \text{ is spanned by } S) \\ &\Rightarrow f \in W^0. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} f \in W^0 &\Rightarrow f(\alpha) = 0 \text{ for all } \alpha \in W \\ &\Rightarrow f(\alpha) = 0 \text{ for all } \alpha \in S \text{ (Since } S \subseteq W) \\ &\Rightarrow f \in S^0. \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $S^0 = W^0$ . We have by Theorem 2.17,  $\dim W + \dim W^0 = \dim V$ . Then

$$\dim W^0 + \dim (W^0)^0 = \dim V^*.$$

Now

$$\dim V = \dim V^*$$

Thus

$$\dim W^0 + \dim (W^0)^0 = \dim W + \dim W^0 \Rightarrow \dim W = \dim (W^0)^0. \quad (2.20)$$

Also  $W$  is a subspace of  $W^{00}$ , since

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha \in W &\Rightarrow f(\alpha) = 0 \text{ for all } f \in W^0 \\ &\Rightarrow \alpha \in W^{00}. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $W$  is a subspace of  $W^{00}$ , we see that  $W = W^{00}$ . □

**Definition 2.11.** *A hyperspace in a vector space is a maximal proper subspace of  $V$ . That is  $N$  is a hyperspace in  $V$  if it satisfies two conditions:*

1.  $N$  is a proper subspace of  $V$ ,
2. If  $W$  is a proper subspace of  $V$  containing  $N$ , then either  $W = N$  or  $W = V$ .

**Theorem 2.20.** *If  $f$  is a non-zero linear functional on the vector space  $V$ , then the null space of  $f$  is a hyperspace in  $V$ . Conversely every hyperspace in  $V$  is the nullspace of a non-zero linear functional on  $V$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $f$  be a non-zero linear functional on  $V$  and  $N_f$  its null space. Let  $\alpha$  be a vector in  $V$  which is not in  $N_f$ . That is  $\alpha$  is such that  $f(\alpha) \neq 0$ . We have to prove that subspace spanned by  $\alpha$  and  $N_f$  is  $V$ .

Any vector in the subspace has the form  $r + c.\alpha$ ,  $r \in N_f$  and  $c \in F$ .

Let  $\beta$  be any vector in  $V$ , define

$$c = \frac{f(\beta)}{f(\alpha)},$$

which makes sense since  $f(\alpha) \neq 0$

Let  $r = \beta - c\alpha$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} f(r) &= f(\beta - c\alpha) \\ &= f(\beta) - c.f(\alpha) \\ &= f(\beta) - \frac{f(\beta)}{f(\alpha)}.f(\alpha) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$f(r) = 0 \Rightarrow r \in N_f$ . Thus any vector  $\beta$  can be written as  $r + c.\alpha$ ,  $r \in N_f$  and  $c \in F$ . This shows that the subspace spanned by  $N_f$  and  $\alpha$  is  $V$ , for every  $\alpha \in V$ , which is not in  $N_f$ . Hence  $N_f$  is a maximal proper subspace of  $V$  that is a hyperspace in  $V$ .

Conversely suppose that  $N$  is a hyper space in  $V$ . Fix a vector  $\alpha$  in  $V$ , which is not in  $N$ . Then the subspace spanned by  $N$  and  $\alpha$  in  $V$ , since  $N$  is a maximal proper subspace of  $V$ . So every vector  $\beta \in V$  has the form  $\beta = r + c.\alpha$ ,  $r \in V$ ,  $c \in F$ . This vector  $r$  and the scalar  $c$  are uniquely determined by  $\beta$ . Since if  $\beta = r' + c'.\alpha$ ,  $r' \in V$ ,  $c' \in F$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= (r - r') + (c - c')\alpha \\ \Rightarrow (r - r') &= (c' - c)\alpha \end{aligned}$$

If  $(c' - c) \neq 0$ , then  $\alpha = \frac{(r-r')}{(c'-c)}$  would belong to  $N$ , which is against our assumption. Hence  $c' - c = 0$ . Thus  $c' = c$  and  $r' = r$ . Thus for every  $\beta \in V$ , there is a unique scalar  $c$  in  $F$  such that  $\beta - c\alpha \in N$ .

Define  $g(\beta)$  as this scalar  $c$  that is  $g(\beta) = c$ , if  $\beta - c\alpha \in N$ . Thus  $g$  is a linear functional on  $V$  and the nullspace of  $g$  is  $N$ . Also

$$\begin{aligned}\beta \in N_g &\Leftrightarrow g(\beta) = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \beta - 0\alpha \in N \\ &\Leftrightarrow \beta \in N.\end{aligned}$$

Thus the nullspace of  $g$  is  $N$ . Since null space of  $g$  not equal to  $V$ , we get  $g \neq 0$ . Hence  $N$  is the null space of a non-zero linear functional  $g$  on  $V$ .  $\square$

**Lemma 2.8.** *If  $f$  and  $g$  are linear functions on a vector space  $V$ , then  $g$  is a scalar multiple of  $f$  if and only if the null space of  $g$  contains the null space of  $f$ , that is if and only if  $f(\alpha) = 0$  implies  $g(\alpha) = 0$ .*

*Proof.* If then  $g$  is a scalar multiple of  $f$ , then  $f(\alpha) = 0$  implies that  $g(\alpha) = 0$ .

Conversely assume that  $f(\alpha) = 0$  implies that  $g(\alpha) = 0$ . Consider the case when  $f = 0$ , then  $g = 0$  as well and  $g$  is trivially a scalar multiple of  $f$ . Suppose  $f \neq 0$ , then the null space  $N_f$  is a hyperspace in  $V$ . Choose some vector  $\alpha \in V$  with  $f(\alpha) \neq 0$  and let

$$c = \frac{f(\alpha)}{g(\alpha)}.$$

Define  $h = g - cf$ . Let  $\beta \in N_f$ , then  $f(\beta) = 0$ . Thus by assumption,  $g(\beta) = 0$ . Thus the linear functional  $h = g - cf$  is 0 on  $N_f$ , since both  $f$  and  $g$  are 0 there and  $h(\beta) = g(\beta) - cf(\beta)$ . Thus  $h$  is 0 on the subspace spanned by  $N_f$  and  $\alpha$ , and that is  $V$ . We conclude that  $h = 0$ , that is  $g = cf$ . Hence the result.  $\square$

**Theorem 2.21.** *Let  $g, f_1, \dots, f_r$  be linear functional on a vector space  $V$  with respective null spaces  $N, N_1, \dots, N_r$ . Then  $g$  is a linear combination of  $f_1, \dots, f_r$  if and only if  $N$  contains the intersection  $N_1 \cap \dots \cap N_r$ .*

*Proof.* Assume that  $g$  is a linear combination of  $f_1, \dots, f_r$ . That is

$$g = c_1 f_1 + \dots + c_r f_r. \quad (2.21)$$

Let  $N$  denotes the null space of  $g$ . Let  $N_1, \dots, N_r$  denotes the null space of  $f_1, \dots, f_r$ . Then if  $f_i(\alpha) = 0$  for each  $i = 1, 2, \dots, r$ , then clearly  $g(\alpha) = 0$ . from equation 2.21.

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha \in N_1 \cap \dots \cap N_r &\Rightarrow \alpha \in N_i \text{ for } i = 1, 2, \dots, r \\ &\Rightarrow f_i(\alpha) = 0 \text{ for } i = 1, 2, \dots, r \\ &\Rightarrow g(\alpha) = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \alpha \in N \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $N_1 \cap \dots \cap N_r \subseteq N$

Therefore  $N$  contains  $N_1 \cap \dots \cap N_r$ .

We shall prove the converse by Mathematical induction on the number  $r$ . Consider the case when  $r = 1$ . By the preceding lemma, the result is true when  $r = 1$ .

Suppose that the result is true when  $r = k - 1$ . Let  $g, f_1, \dots, f_k$  be linear functionals with respective null spaces  $N, N_1, \dots, N_k$  such that  $N_1 \cap \dots \cap N_k$  is contained in  $N$ . Let  $g', f'_1, \dots, f'_{k-1}$  be the restrictions of  $g, f_1, \dots, f_{k-1}$  respectively to the subspace  $N$ . Then  $g', f'_1, \dots, f'_{k-1}$  are linear functionals on the vector space  $N_k$ . Also if  $f'_i(\alpha) = 0$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k - 1$ , for some  $\alpha \in N_k$ , then  $\alpha \in N_1 \cap \dots \cap N_{k-1} \cap N_k$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha \in N_k \text{ and } f'_i(\alpha) = 0 \text{ for } i = 1, 2, \dots, k - 1 &\Rightarrow f_1(\alpha) = 0, \dots, f_{k-1}(\alpha) = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \alpha \in N_1, \dots, \alpha \in N_{k-1} \\ &\Rightarrow \alpha \in N_1 \cap \dots \cap N_{k-1} \text{ and } \alpha \in N_k \\ &\Rightarrow \alpha \in N_1 \cap \dots \cap N_k \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \alpha \in N \text{ since } N \text{ contains } \alpha \in N_1 \cap \dots \cap N_k$$

$$\Rightarrow g(\alpha) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow g'(\alpha) = 0$$

This implies that the null space of  $g'$  contains the intersection of the nullspaces of  $f'_1, f'_2, \dots, f'_{k-1}$ . By the induction hypothesis for the case  $r = k - 1$ , we have  $g'$  is a linear combination of  $f'_1, f'_2, \dots, f'_{k-1}$ . Therefore there exists scalars  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_{k-1}$  such that

$$g' = \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} c_i f'_i.$$

Now define  $h = g - \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} c_i f_i$ . Then  $h$  is a linear functional on  $V$ . Now

$$\begin{aligned} f_k(\alpha) = 0 &\Rightarrow \alpha \in N_k \\ &\Rightarrow g'(\alpha) = \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} c_i f'_i(\alpha) \\ &\Rightarrow g(\alpha) = \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} c_i f_i(\alpha) \\ &\Rightarrow g(\alpha) - \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} c_i f_i(\alpha) = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow h(\alpha) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Thus the null space of  $h$  contains the null space of  $f_k$ . Hence by previous lemma,  $h$  is a scalar multiple of  $f(k)$ . So let  $h = c_k f_k$ . Thus  $g - \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} c_i f_i = c_k f_k \Rightarrow g = \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} c_i f_i + c_k f_k = \sum_{i=1}^k c_i f_i$ . Thus  $g$  is a linear combination of  $f_1, \dots, f_k$ . Hence the result.  $\square$

**Example 31.** Using above theorem, prove the following: If  $W$  is a subspace of a finite dimensional vector space  $V$  and if  $\{g_1, g_2, \dots, g_r\}$  is any basis for  $W^0$ , then

$$W = \bigcap_{i=1}^r N_{g_i}$$



Solution: Let  $\alpha \in W$ . Since  $g_1, g_2, \dots, g_r$  are in  $W^0$ ,  $g_1(\alpha) = 0, g_2(\alpha) = 0, \dots, g_r(\alpha) = 0$ . This means that  $\alpha \in N_{g_1}, \alpha \in N_{g_2}, \dots, \alpha \in N_{g_r}$ . Hence  $\alpha \in \bigcap_{i=1}^r N_{g_i}$ . Thus

$$W \subseteq \bigcap_{i=1}^r N_{g_i}. \quad (2.22)$$

Conversely let  $\alpha \in \bigcap_{i=1}^r N_{g_i}$ . Then  $\alpha \in N_{g_1}, \alpha \in N_{g_2}, \dots, \alpha \in N_{g_r}$ . Means that  $g_1(\alpha) = 0, g_2(\alpha) = 0, \dots, g_r(\alpha) = 0$ , since  $\{g_1, g_2, \dots, g_r\}$  is any basis for  $W^0$ , every  $g \in W^0$  can be written as a linear combination of  $g_1, g_2, \dots, g_r$ . Since each  $g_i(\alpha) = 0$ , we get

$$g(\alpha) = 0 \text{ for } g \in W^0.$$

Thus

$$\alpha \in W^{00} = W.$$

Hence  $\alpha \in W$ . Hence we get

$$\bigcap_{i=1}^r N_{g_i} \subseteq W. \quad (2.23)$$

From equations 2.22 and 2.23 we can conclude that

$$W = \bigcap_{i=1}^r N_{g_i}.$$

### Exersices

1. Let  $n$  be a positive integer and  $F$  be a field. Let  $W$  be the set of all vectors  $(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in F^n$  such that  $x_1 + \dots + x_n = 0$ . Then show that  $W^0$  consists of all linear functionals  $f$  of the form

$$f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = c \sum_{j=1}^n x_j.$$

## 2.7 The Transpose of a Linear Transformation

Suppose  $V$  and  $W$  be two vector spaces over the same field  $F$ . Let  $T$  be a linear transformation  $V$  into  $W$ . Then  $T$  induces a linear transformation from  $W^*$  into  $V^*$ . Suppose  $g$  is a linear functional on  $W$ , and let

$$f(\alpha) = g(T(\alpha)), \alpha \in V \quad (2.24)$$

Then Equation 2.24 defines a function  $f$  from  $V$  into  $F$ , namely the composition of  $T$ , a function from  $V$  into  $W$ , with  $g$ , a function from  $W$  into  $F$ . Since both  $T$  and  $g$  are linear and composition is linear,  $f$  is a linear functional on  $V$ . Thus  $T$  provides us with a rule  $T^t$  which associates with each linear functional  $g$  on  $W$  a linear functional  $f = T^t g$  on  $V$ , defined by Equation 2.24. Note that  $T^t$  is a linear transformation from  $W^*$  into  $V^*$ , for if  $g_1$  and  $g_2$  are in  $W^*$  and  $c$  is a scalar

$$\begin{aligned} [T^t(cg_1 + g_2)](\alpha) &= (cg_1 + g_2)(T\alpha) \\ &= cg_1(T\alpha) + g_2(T\alpha) \\ &= c(T^t g_1)(\alpha) + (T^t g_2)(\alpha) \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $T^t(cg_1 + g_2) = c.T^t(g_1) + T^t(g_2)$ .

**Theorem 2.22.** *Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces over the field  $F$ . For each linear transformation  $T$  from  $V$  into  $W$ , there is a unique linear transformation  $T^t$  from  $W^*$  into  $V^*$  such that  $(T^t g)(\alpha) = g(T\alpha)$  for every  $g \in W^*$  and  $\alpha \in V$ .*

If  $g_1$  and  $g_2$  are in  $W^*$  and  $c$  is a scalar

$$\begin{aligned} [T^t(cg_1 + g_2)](\alpha) &= (cg_1 + g_2)(T\alpha) \\ &= cg_1(T\alpha) + g_2(T\alpha) \\ &= c(T^t g_1)(\alpha) + (T^t g_2)(\alpha) \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $T^t(cg_1 + g_2) = c.T^t(g_1) + T^t(g_2)$ . We call  $T^t$  the Transpose of  $T$  or adjoint of  $T$ .

**Theorem 2.23.** *Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces over the field  $F$ . Let  $T$  be a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ . The null space of  $T^t$  is the annihilator of the range of  $T$ . If  $V$  and  $W$  are finite dimensional, then*

(a)  $\text{rank}(T^t) = \text{rank}(T)$

(b) the range of  $T^t$  is the annihilator of the null space of  $T$ .

*Proof.* If  $g \in W^*$ , then by definition,

$$T^t g(\alpha) = g(T\alpha).$$

$$\begin{aligned} g \in \text{null space of } T^t &\Leftrightarrow T^t(g) = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow T^t g(\alpha) = 0 \quad \forall \alpha \in V \\ &\Leftrightarrow g(T\alpha) = 0 \quad \forall \alpha \in V \\ &\Leftrightarrow g \text{ is the annihilator of the range of } T \end{aligned}$$

Thus the null space of  $T^t$  is the annihilator of the range of  $T$ . Suppose  $\dim V = n$  and  $\dim W = m$ .

(a) Let  $r$  be the rank of  $T$ , that is the range of  $T$  is  $r$ . By Theorem 2.17, dimension of annihilator of the range of  $T$  is  $m - r$ . We observed in the beginning of the proof that null space of  $T^t$  is the annihilator of the range of  $T$ . Hence nullity of  $T^t = m - r$ . By rank nullity theorem,  $\text{rank } T^t + \text{Nullity } T^t = \dim W = m$ .  
Hence  $\text{rank } T^t = m - (m - r) = r$ .

(b) Let  $N$  be the null space of  $T$ . If  $f$  is a linear functional in the range of  $T^t$ , then  $f = T^t g$  for some  $g \in W^*$ . Hence for all  $\alpha \in N$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} f(\alpha) &= (T^t g)(\alpha) \\ &= g(T\alpha) \\ &= g(0) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $f \in N^0$ . Thus the range of  $T^t$  is a subspace of  $N^0$ . But

$$\begin{aligned}
 \dim N^0 &= \dim V - \dim N \\
 &= \dim V - \text{Nullity } T \\
 &= \text{Rank } T \\
 &= \text{Rank}(T^t) \\
 &= \text{dimension of the range of } T^t
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence dimension of the annihilator of the null space of  $T$  is same as dimension of the range of  $T^t$ . Thus we get the range of  $T^t$  is the annihilator of the null space of  $T$ .

□

**Theorem 2.24.** *Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces over a field  $F$ . Let  $\mathcal{B}$  be an ordered basis for  $V$  with dual basis  $\mathcal{B}^*$  and let  $\mathcal{B}'$  be an ordered basis for  $V$  with dual basis  $\mathcal{B}'^*$ . Let  $T$  be a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ . Let  $A$  be the matrix of  $T$  relative to  $\mathcal{B}$ ,  $\mathcal{B}'$  and let  $B$  be the matrix of  $T^t$  relative to  $\mathcal{B}'^*$ ,  $\mathcal{B}^*$ . Then  $B_{ij} = A_{ij}$ .*

*Proof.* Let

$$\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$$

$$\mathcal{B}' = \{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m\},$$

$$\mathcal{B}^* = \{f_1, f_2, \dots, f_n\}$$

$$\mathcal{B}'^* = \{g_1, g_2, \dots, g_m\}.$$

By the definition,

$$T\alpha_j = \sum_{i=1}^m A_{ij}\beta_i, \quad j = 1, 2, \dots, n. \quad (2.25)$$

$$T^t g_j = \sum_{i=1}^m B_{ij} f_i, \quad j = 1, 2, \dots, m. \quad (2.26)$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned} T^t g_j(\alpha_i) &= g_j T(\alpha_i) \\ &= g_j \left( \sum_{k=1}^m A_{ki} \beta_k \right) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^m A_{ki} g_j(\beta_k) \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^m A_{ki} \delta_{jk} \\ &= A_{ji} \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$T^t g_j(\alpha_i) = A_{ji} \quad (2.27)$$

From Equation 2.13, we have for any linear functional  $f$  on  $V$ ,

$$f = \sum_{i=1}^n f(\alpha_i) f_i.$$

apply this to the linear functional  $f = T^t g_j$  and use the fact that  $T^t g_j = \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ji} f_i$ , we have

$$T^t g_j = \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ji} f_i \quad (2.28)$$

From Equations 2.26 and 2.28, we get  $B_{ij} = A_{ji}$ .  $\square$

If  $T$  is a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$  whose matrix in some pair of bases is a matrix  $A$ , then the transpose transformation  $T^t$  is represented in the dual pair of bases by the transpose matrix  $A^t$ .

**Definition 2.12.** If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix over the field  $F$ , the transpose  $A$  is the  $n \times m$  matrix  $A^t$  defined by  $A_{ij}^t = A_{ji}$ .

**Theorem 2.25.** Let  $A$  be any  $m \times n$  matrix over the field  $F$ . Then the row rank of  $A$  is equal to the column rank of  $A$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  be the standard ordered basis for  $F^n$  and  $\mathcal{B}' = \{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_m\}$ , be the standard ordered basis for  $F^m$ . Let  $T$  be the linear transformation from  $F^n$  to  $F^m$  such that the matrix of  $T$  relative to the pair  $\mathcal{B}, \mathcal{B}'$  is  $A$ , That is  $T(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_m)$  where

$$\sum_{j=1}^n A_{ij} x_j.$$

The column vectors of the matrix  $A$  spans the range of  $T$ . Hence column space of  $A$  is same as the range of  $T$ . Therefore  $\text{rank} T = \text{column rank } (A)$ .

Relative to the dual bases  $\mathcal{B}'^*$  and  $\mathcal{B}^*$ , matrix of the transformation  $T^t$  is the matrix  $A^T$ . Hence  $\text{rank} T^t = \text{column rank } (A^T)$ . But the rows of  $A$  are columns of  $A^T$  Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Row rank of } A &= \text{Rank } (T^t) \\ &= \text{Rank } (T) \\ &= \text{column rank of } A \end{aligned}$$

Thus Row rank of  $A = \text{column rank of } A$ . □

**Definition 2.13.** If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix over the field  $F$  and  $T$  is the linear transformation from  $F^n$  into  $F^m$ , then  $\text{rank}(T) = \text{row rank } (A) = \text{column rank } (A)$  and we call this number simply the rank of  $A$ .

**Example 32.** Find the rank and nullity of the linear transformation  $T : R^3 \rightarrow R^3$  defined by

$$T(x_1, x_2, x_3) = (x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3, 2x_1 + x_2, -x_1 - 2x_2 + 2x_3).$$

Consider the standard ordered basis  $B = \{e_1, e_2, e_3\}$ . Then matrix of  $T$  with respect to this basis is

$$T_B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

This matrix can be reduced to

$$T_B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -10 & 2/3 \\ 0 & 1 & -4/3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus  $\text{rank } A = 2$  and therefore  $\text{rank } T = 2$ . Nullity  $T = 1$ .

### Exercises

- Let  $F$  be a field and let  $f$  be the linear functional on  $F^2$  defined by  $f(x_1, x_2) = ax_1 + bx_2$ . For each of the linear operators  $T$ , let  $g = T^t f$ , and find  $g(x_1, x_2)$ .
  - $T(x_1, x_2) = (0, x_2)$ ;
  - $T(x_1, x_2) = (2x_2, x_1)$ ;
  - $T(x_1, x_2) = (x_1 + x_2, x_1 - x_2)$ .
- Let  $V$  be the vector space of all polynomial functions over the field of real numbers and let  $f$  be the linear functional on  $V$  defined by

$$f(p) = \int_a^b p(x) dx.$$

If  $D$  is the differentiation operator on  $V$ , what is  $D^t f$ ?

- Let  $V$  be the space of all  $n \times n$  matrices over a field  $F$  and let  $B$  be a fixed  $n \times n$  matrix. If  $T$  is the linear operator on  $V$  defined by  $T(A) = AB - BA$ , and if  $f$  is the trace function, what is  $T^t f$ ?

## Chapter 3

# Elementary Canonical Forms

### 3.1 Characteristic values

**Definition 3.1.** Let  $V$  be a vector space over the field  $F$  and let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$ . A characteristic value of  $T$  is a scalar  $c$  in  $F$  such that there is a non-zero vector  $\alpha \in V$  with  $T(\alpha) = c\alpha$ . If  $c$  is a characteristic value of  $T$  then any  $\alpha \in V$  such that  $T(\alpha) = c\alpha$  is called a characteristic vector of  $T$  associated with the characteristic value  $c$ .

**Note 3.1.** The collection of all  $\alpha$  such that  $T(\alpha) = c\alpha$  is called the characteristic space associated with  $c$ . Characteristic values are often called characteristic roots, latent roots eigenvalues, proper values, or spectral values. In this book we shall use only the name characteristic values.

If  $T$  is any linear operator and  $c$  is any scalar, the set of all characteristic vectors of  $T$  is a subspace of  $V$ . It is the null space of the linear transformation  $(T - cI)$ . We call  $c$  a characteristic value of  $T$  if this subspace is different from the zero subspace, That is, if  $(T - cI)$  fails to be one-one. If the underlying space  $V$  is finite-dimensional,  $(T - cI)$  fails to be one-one precisely when its determinant is different from 0.

**Theorem 3.1.** Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a finite-dimensional space  $V$



and let  $c$  be a scalar. The following are equivalent.

1.  $c$  is a characteristic value of  $T$ .
2. The operator  $(T - cI)$  is singular (not invertible).
3.  $\det (T - cI) = 0$ .

*Proof.* (1) $\Rightarrow$  (2)

Assume that  $c$  is a characteristic value of  $T$ .

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 c \text{ is a characteristic value of } T &\Leftrightarrow \text{there exists } \alpha \neq 0, \text{ in } V \text{ such that } T(\alpha) = c\alpha. \\
 &\Leftrightarrow \text{there exists } \alpha \neq 0, \text{ in } V \text{ such that } T(\alpha) - c\alpha = 0 \\
 &\Leftrightarrow T - cI \text{ is not one-one} \\
 &\Leftrightarrow T - cI \text{ is not invertible, since } V \text{ is finite dimensional}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$(2) \Leftrightarrow (3)$$

Assume that the operator  $(T - cI)$  is not invertible. That is if and only if the matrix of  $T - cI$  with respect to any basis is not invertible. And that is if and only if determinant of  $T - cI$  is not equal to zero. Hence the result.  $\square$

The determinant criteria is very important and we use this to trace out characteristic values of  $T$ . We have  $\det T - cI$  is a polynomial of degree  $n$  in the variable  $c$ , we can get characteristic values as the roots of this polynomial.

If  $\mathcal{B}$  is any ordered basis for  $V$ , and  $A = [T]_{\mathcal{B}}$ , then  $(T - cI)$  is invertible if and only if the matrix  $(A - cI)$  is invertible. Using this idea we define characteristic value of a matrix as follows:

**Definition 3.2.** If  $A$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix over the field  $F$ , a characteristic value of  $A$  in  $F$  is a scalar  $c$  in  $F$  such that the matrix  $(A - cI)$  is singular (not invertible).

Since  $c$  is a characteristic value of  $A$  if and only if  $\det(A - cI) = 0$ , or equivalently if and only if  $\det(cI - A) = 0$ , we form the matrix  $(xI - A)$  with polynomial entries, and consider the polynomial  $f = \det(xI - A)$ . Clearly the characteristic values of  $A$  in  $F$  are just the scalars  $c \in F$  such that  $f(c) = 0$ . For this reason  $f$  is called the characteristic polynomial of  $A$ . It is important to note that  $f$  is a monic polynomial which has degree exactly  $n$ .

**Lemma 3.2.** *Similar matrices have the same characteristic polynomial.*

*Proof.* Suppose  $A$  and  $B$  are  $n \times n$  matrices over the field  $F$  and  $B = P^{-1}AP$ .

Then

$$\begin{aligned} xI - B &= xI - (P^{-1}AP) \\ &= P^{-1}PxI - P^{-1}AP \\ &= P^{-1}xIP - P^{-1}AP \\ &= P^{-1}[xI - A]P \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} \det(xI - B) &= \det(P^{-1}[xI - A]P) \\ &= \det(P^{-1})\det[xI - A]\det(P) \\ &= \det(P^{-1})\det(P)\det[xI - A] \\ &= \det(P^{-1}P)\det[xI - A] \\ &= \det[xI - A]. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Remark 10.** Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space over the field  $F$  with dimension  $n$ . Let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$ . Let  $\mathcal{B}$  and  $\mathcal{B}'$  be two ordered bases for  $V$ . Then matrices associated with these bases are similar matrices as we have noted earlier. By above lemma similar matrices have

same characteristic polynomial. So we define the **characteristic polynomial** of the linear operator  $T$  as the characteristic polynomial of any  $n \times n$  matrix which represents  $T$  in some ordered basis for  $V$ .

Just as for matrices, the roots of the characteristic polynomial of  $T$  are the characteristic values of  $T$ . Since the characteristic polynomial is of degree  $n$  over the field  $F$ , the linear operator cannot have more than  $n$  distinct characteristic values. In some cases  $T$  cannot have any characteristic value at all.

**Example 33.** Let  $T : R^2 \rightarrow R^2$  be defined as  $T(x_1, x_2) = (-x_2, x_1)$ . Then the matrix related to standard ordered basis is  $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ . The characteristic polynomial for  $T$  is given by

$$\det(xI - A) = \det \begin{bmatrix} x & 1 \\ -1 & x \end{bmatrix} = x^2 + 1$$

This polynomial has no roots in  $R$ . So  $T$  has no characteristic values in  $R$ .

If  $U$  is the linear operator on  $C^2$  which is represented by  $A$  in the standard ordered basis, then  $U$  has two characteristic values  $i$  and  $-i$ .

The above example says that while we are discussing characteristic values, we have to specify the scalar field involved. The above matrix has no characteristic value in  $R$ , while it has two characteristic values in  $C$ .

**Example 34.** Let  $A$  be the real  $3 \times 3$  matrix  $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ . The characteristic polynomial of  $A$  is given by  $\det(xI - A) = 0$ .

$$\det(xI - A) = \begin{vmatrix} x-3 & -1 & 1 \\ -2 & x-2 & 1 \\ -2 & -2 & x \end{vmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= (x-3)[(x-2)x+2] + 1(-2x+2) + 1[4+2(x-2)] \\
&= x^3 - 2x^2 + 2x - 3x^2 + 6x - 6 - 2x + 2 + 4 + 2x - 4 \\
&= x^3 - 5x^2 + 8x - 4 \\
&= (x-1)(x^2 - 4x + 4) \\
&= (x-1)(x-2)^2
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore characteristic values are given by  $x = 1$  and  $x = 2$ .

Now we have to determine characteristic vector corresponding to these eigenvalues. Let  $T$  be a linear operator, which is represented in the standard ordered basis by the matrix  $A$ . Then  $T : R^3 \rightarrow R^3$  is given by:

$$\begin{aligned}
T(x_1, x_2, x_3) &= \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= (3x_1 + x_2 - x_3, 2x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3, 2x_1 + 2x_2)
\end{aligned}$$

The characteristic vectors associated with the characteristic value 1:

We have to find  $(x_1, x_2, x_3) \in R^3$  such that  $T(x_1, x_2, x_3) = 1.(x_1, x_2, x_3)$   
We have

$$\begin{aligned}
A - I &= \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

Since first two rows of this matrix is same, its rank  $\leq 2$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} &\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1/2 & -1/2 \\ 1 & 1/2 & -1/2 \\ 1 & 1 & -1/2 \end{bmatrix} \\
&\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1/2 & -1/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1/2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1/2 & -1/2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This implies that Rank of  $T - I$  is 2. Since dimension of  $R^3$  is 3, we have nullity of  $T - I$  is 1. Thus the null space of  $T - I$  is one dimensional. In other words the space of characteristic vectors of  $T$  associated with characteristic value 1 is one dimensional.

We have by inspection,

$$\begin{aligned} (T - I)(1, 0, 2) &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1/2 & -1/2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 - 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $(1, 0, 2)$  is in the null space of  $T - I$ . Thus  $(1, 0, 2)$  is a characteristic vector. Since characteristic space is one dimensional, the vector  $(1, 0, 2)$  spans the same.

The characteristic vectors associated with the characteristic value 2:

We have to find  $(x_1, x_2, x_3) \in R^3$  such that  $T(x_1, x_2, x_3) = 2.(x_1, x_2, x_3)$   
We have

$$\begin{aligned} A - 2I &= \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix} &\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \\ &\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\sim \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Hence rank of  $A - 2I$  is 2 and nullity is 1. Hence null space of  $A - 2I$  is one dimensional.

$$\begin{aligned} (T - 2I)(1, 1, 2) &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 + 1 - 2 \\ 0 \\ -2 + 2 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $(1, 1, 2)$  is in null space of  $T - 2I$ . Evidently  $T\alpha = 2\alpha$  if and only if  $\alpha$  is a scalar multiple of  $(1, 1, 2)$ .

**Remark 11.** 1. Characteristic polynomial of the identity operator will be given by

$$\begin{aligned} \det (xI - I) &= \begin{vmatrix} x & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & x & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & & & \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & x \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & & & \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= \begin{vmatrix} (x-1) & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & (x-1) & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & & & \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & (x-1) \end{vmatrix} \\ &= (x-1)(x-1)\dots(x-1) \\ &= (x-1)^n \end{aligned}$$

2. Characteristic polynomial of the zero operator will be given by

$$\det (xI - 0I) = \begin{vmatrix} x & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & x & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & & & \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & x \end{vmatrix} - 0 = (x)(x) \dots (x) = x^n$$

**Definition 3.3.** Let  $T$  be a linear operator on the finite dimensional space  $V$ . We say that  $T$  is **diagonalizable** if there exists a basis for  $V$  each vector of which is a characteristic vector of  $T$ .

The following gives idea about the name diagonalizable:  
If there exists a basis  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  for  $V$  such that each  $\alpha_i$  is a characteristic vector of  $T$ , then the matrix of  $T$  in the ordered basis  $\beta$  is a diagonal matrix. If  $T(\alpha_i) = c_i \alpha_i$ , then

$$[T]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} c_1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & c_2 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & & & \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & c_n \end{bmatrix}$$

Note that the scalars  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n$  need not be distinct.

Thus the linear operator  $T$  is diagonalizable, if there is a basis  $\mathcal{B}$  for  $V$  consisting of characteristic vectors of  $T$  and then the matrix of  $T$  in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}$  is a diagonal matrix for which the entries in the main diagonal are characteristic values of  $T$ .

We can also say that  $T$  is diagonalizable if the characteristic vectors of  $T$  span  $V$ . This is because, we can select a basis out of any spanning set of vectors.

**Remark 12.** 1. In Example 33, we have a linear operator on  $R^2$  which is not diagonalizable. That operator has no characteristic values and hence no characteristic vectors. Therefore there exists no basis for  $R^2$  consisting of characteristic vectors of  $T$ .

2. In Example 34, we have a linear operator on  $R^3$  which is not diagonalizable. That operator has two characteristic values 1 and 2, and

the space of characteristic vectors corresponding to these characteristic values are one dimensional. And  $R^3$  is 3 dimensional. Hence a set containing characteristic vectors alone cannot span  $R^3$ . Therefore there exists no basis for  $R^3$  consisting of characteristic vectors alone. Thus  $T$  is not diagonalizable.

**Lemma 3.3.** *Suppose that  $T\alpha = c\alpha$ . If  $f$  is any polynomial, then  $f(T)\alpha = f(c)\alpha$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $f(x) = c_0 + c_1x + c_2x^2 + \dots + c_nx^n$ . Then  $f(T) = c_0I + c_1T + c_2T^2 + \dots + c_nT^n$ .

We have  $T\alpha = c\alpha$ .

Then  $T^2\alpha = T(T\alpha) = T(c\alpha) = c.T(\alpha) = c^2\alpha$ .

Similarly we can prove that  $T^3\alpha = c^3\alpha, \dots, T^n\alpha = c^n\alpha$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} f(T)(\alpha) &= c_0I(\alpha) + c_1T(\alpha) + c_2T^2(\alpha) + \dots + c_nT^n(\alpha) \\ &= c_0\alpha + c_1c.\alpha + c_2c^2\alpha + \dots + c_nc^n(\alpha) \\ &= (c_0 + c_1c + c_2c^2 + \dots + c_nc^n)(\alpha) \\ &= f(c)\alpha. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Lemma 3.4.** *Let  $T$  be a linear operator on the finite dimensional space  $V$ . Let  $c_1, \dots, c_k$  be the distinct characteristic values of  $T$  and let  $W_i$  be the space of characteristic vectors associated with the characteristic value  $c_i$ . If  $W = W_1 + \dots + W_k$ , then*

$$\dim W = \dim W_1 + \dots + \dim W_k.$$

*In fact, if  $\mathcal{B}_i$  is an ordered basis for  $W_i$ , then  $\mathcal{B} = (\mathcal{B}_1, \dots, \mathcal{B}_k)$  is an ordered basis for  $W$ .*



*Proof.* We know that if  $W = W_1 + \dots + W_k$ , then  $W$  is the subspace spanned by  $W_1 \cup \dots \cup W_k$ . In other words  $W$  is the subspace of  $V$  spanned by all characteristic vectors of  $T$ . Now suppose that for each  $i$ , we have a vector  $\beta_i$  in  $W_i$  and assume that

$$\beta_1 + \beta_2 + \dots + \beta_k = 0$$

We will show that each  $\beta_i = 0$ .

Each  $\beta_i$  is a characteristic vector, therefore  $T\beta_i = c_i\beta_i$  for each  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ .

Let  $f$  be any polynomial. Then previous lemma ensures that  $f(T)\beta_i = f(c_i)\beta_i$ . Now

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= f(T)0 \\ &= f(T)(\beta_1 + \beta_2 + \dots + \beta_k) \\ &= f(T)\beta_1 + f(T)\beta_2 + \dots + f(T)\beta_k \\ &= f(c_1)\beta_1 + f(c_2)\beta_2 + \dots + f(c_k)\beta_k \end{aligned}$$

Thus for any polynomial  $f$ , we have

$$f(c_1)\beta_1 + f(c_2)\beta_2 + \dots + f(c_k)\beta_k = 0.$$

Choose polynomials  $f_1, \dots, f_k$  such that  $f_i(c_j) = \delta_{ij}$

For each  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= f_i(T).0 \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^k \delta_{ij}\beta_j \\ &= \beta_i \end{aligned}$$

Now let  $\mathcal{B}_i$  be an ordered basis for  $W_i$  and let  $\mathcal{B}$  be the sequence  $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathcal{B}_1, \dots, \mathcal{B}_k\}$ . Since  $\mathcal{B}_i$  spans  $W_i$  for each  $i$ , we see that the  $\mathcal{B}$  spans  $W$ . Now we show that  $\mathcal{B}$  is linearly independent. Any linear relation between the vectors of  $\mathcal{B}$  is of the form  $\beta_1 + \dots + \beta_k = 0$ , where  $\beta_i \in W_i$  is a linear combination of elements of  $\mathcal{B}_i$ . Then from the above argument each  $\beta_i = 0$ . Since each  $\mathcal{B}_i$  is linearly independent (Being a basis), we see that we have only the trivial linear relation between the vectors in  $\mathcal{B}$ . Hence  $\mathcal{B}$  is linearly independent. Hence it is a basis for  $W$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 3.2.** *Let  $T$  be a linear operator on the finite dimensional space  $V$ . Let  $c_1, \dots, c_k$  be the distinct characteristic values of  $T$  and let  $W_i$  be the null space of  $T - c_i I$ . the following are equivalent.*

1.  $T$  is diagonalizable.
2. The characteristic polynomial for  $T$  is

$$f = (x - c_1)^{d_1} \dots (x - c_k)^{d_k}$$

and  $\dim W_i = d_i, i = 1, \dots, k$ .

3.  $\dim W_1 + \dots + \dim W_k = \dim V$ .

*Proof.* (i)  $\Rightarrow$  (ii)

Suppose  $T$  is diagonalizable. Then there is basis for  $V$  consisting of characteristic vectors alone. Then the matrix of  $T$  in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}$  is a diagonal matrix whose diagonal entries are the characteristic values  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  where each  $c_i$  repeated a certain number of times. If  $c_i$  is repeated  $d$  times in the

main diagonal of the matrix  $[T]_{\mathcal{B}}$ , then it has the following form

$$\begin{bmatrix} c_1 I_1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & c_2 I_2 & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & c_k I_k \end{bmatrix},$$

where  $I_1$  is the  $d_1 \times d_1$  identity matrix,  $I_2$  is the  $d_2 \times d_2$  identity matrix and so on.

From this matrix, we can see that the characteristic polynomial of  $T$  is

$$f = \det (xI - [T]_{\mathcal{B}}) = (x - c_1)^{d_1} (x - c_2)^{d_2} \dots (x - c_k)^{d_k}.$$

Now we prove that  $\dim W_i = d_i, i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ . Since  $W_i$  is the null space of  $T - c_i I$ , the dimension of  $W_i$  is the nullity of  $T - c_i I$ . But the matrix of  $T - c_i I$  in ordered basis is a diagonal matrix  $[T - c_i I]_{\mathcal{B}}$ . The nullity of a diagonal matrix is equal to the number of zero entries which it has on its main diagonal, and the matrix  $[T - c_i I]_{\mathcal{B}}$  has  $d_i$  zeros on its main diagonal. Hence  $\dim W_i = d_i, i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ .

(2)  $\Rightarrow$  (3)

Assume that the characteristic polynomial for  $T$  is

$$f = (x - c_1)^{d_1} \dots (x - c_k)^{d_k}$$

and  $\dim W_i = d_i, i = 1, \dots, k$ .

Since  $T$  is a linear operator on the finite dimensional vector space  $V$ , we know that the characteristic polynomial  $f$  of  $T$  is of degree  $n$ , where  $n = \dim V$ . But the degree of the polynomial  $f$  is  $d_1 + \dots + d_k$ . Hence  $d_1 + \dots + d_k = n = \dim V$ . That is  $\dim W_1 + \dots + \dim W_n = \dim V$ .

(3)  $\Rightarrow$  (1)

Suppose that  $\dim W_1 + \dots + \dim W_n = \dim V$ . Let  $W = W_1 + \dots + W_n$ . Then  $W$  is the subspace of  $V$  spanned by  $W_1 \cup \dots \cup W_n$ . In other word,  $W$  is the subspace of  $V$  spanned by all the characteristic vectors of  $T$ . By the previous lemma,  $\dim W_1 + \dots + \dim W_n = \dim W$ . Thus we can conclude that  $\dim W = \dim V$ . Hence  $W = V$ . Thus the subspace spanned by all the characteristic vectors of  $T$  is  $V$ . Thus  $T$  is diagonalizable.  $\square$

**Example 35.** Let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $R^3$  which is represented in the standard ordered basis by the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 5 & -6 & -6 \\ -1 & 4 & 2 \\ 3 & -6 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$$

The characteristic polynomial of  $T$  is  $\det xI - A = \begin{vmatrix} x-5 & 6 & 6 \\ 1 & x-4 & -2 \\ -3 & 6 & x+4 \end{vmatrix} = (x-1)(x-2)^2$ .

Thus the characteristic values of  $T$  are 1 and 2. Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be the characteristic spaces corresponding to the characteristic value 1 and 2 respectively.

$W_1$  is the null space of  $T - I$ . We have

$$A - I = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -6 & -6 \\ -1 & 3 & 2 \\ 3 & -6 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$A - 2I = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -6 & -6 \\ -1 & 2 & 2 \\ 3 & -6 & -6 \end{bmatrix}$$

Here the rank of  $T - I$  is 2 and rank of  $T - 2I$  is 1. Hence the nullity of  $T - I$  is 1 and nullity of  $T - 2I$  is 2. Hence the  $\dim W_1=1$  and  $\dim W_2=2$ . Thus  $\dim W_1+\dim W_2 = 1 + 2 = 3 = \dim R^3$ . Hence by the above theorem,  $T$  is diagonalizable.

Now we will find the basis of  $R^3$  consisting of characteristic vectors alone.

We have

$$(A-I)(x_1, x_2, x_3) = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -6 & -6 \\ -1 & 3 & 2 \\ 3 & -6 & -5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = (4x_1-6x_2-6x_3, -x_1+3x_2+2x_3, 3x_1-6x_2-5x_3)$$

The vector  $\alpha_1 = (3, -1, 3)$  is in the null space of  $T - I$ . Since  $W_1$  is one dimensional,  $\{\alpha_1\}$  is a basis of  $W_1$ . Since

$$(T-2I)(x_1, x_2, x_3) = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -6 & -6 \\ -1 & 3 & 2 \\ 3 & -6 & -5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = (3x_1-6x_2-6x_3, -x_1+2x_2+2x_3, 3x_1-6x_2-6x_3)$$

The vectors  $\alpha_2 = (2, 1, 0)$ ,  $\alpha_3 = (2, 0, 1)$  are in the null space of  $T - 2I$ . So both are in  $W_2$ . They are linearly independent also. Therefore  $\{\alpha_2, \alpha_3\}$  is a basis for  $W_2$ . Thus  $B' = \{(3, -1, 3), (2, 1, 0), (2, 0, 1)\}$  is a basis for  $R^3$ . Since  $T\alpha_1 = \alpha_1$ ,  $T\alpha_2 = 2\alpha_2$  and  $T\alpha_3 = 2\alpha_3$ ,

$$D_1 = [T]_{B'} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

which is a diagonal matrix. Since  $A$  is the matrix of  $T$  in the standard ordered basis  $\{e_1, e_2, e_3\}$ , the matrix  $D$  is similar to  $A$ . That is there is an invertible matrix  $P$  such that  $P^{-1}AP = D$ . Columns of  $P$  are the coordinates of  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$ .

## Exercises

1. Let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $R^3$  which is represented in the standard ordered basis by the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} -9 & 4 & 4 \\ -8 & 3 & 4 \\ -16 & 8 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

Prove that  $T$  is diagonalizable by exhibiting a basis for  $R^3$ , each vector of which is a characteristic vector of  $T$ .

2. Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a finite dimensional vector space  $V$ . Show that non-zero characteristic vectors of  $T$  are linearly independent.
3. Let  $T$  be a linear operator on the  $n$ -dimensional vector space  $V$  and suppose that  $T$  has  $n$  distinct characteristic values. Prove that  $T$  is diagonalizable.
4. Let  $A$  an  $m \times n$  triangular matrix over the field  $F$ . Prove that the characteristic values of  $A$  are the diagonal entries of  $A$ .
5. Let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $R^4$  which is represented in the standard ordered basis by the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ a & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & b & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & c & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

What are the values of  $a, b, c$  such that  $T$  is diagonalizable?

6. Let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & -3 & -2 \\ 4 & -1 & -2 \\ 10 & -5 & -3 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Is  $A$  similar over the field  $R$  to a diagonal matrix? Is  $A$  similar over the field  $C$  to a diagonal matrix?

## 3.2 Annihilating Polynomials

**Definition 3.4.** Let  $V$  be a vector space over the field  $F$  and  $T$  be a linear operation on  $V$ . Let  $p$  be a polynomial over the field  $F$ . That is  $p \in F[x]$ . Then we say that  $p$  annihilates  $T$  if  $p(T) = 0$ .

**Remark 13.** If  $V$  is a finite dimensional vector space over  $F$  and if  $T$  is a linear operator in  $V$ , then there exists a non-zero polynomial  $f$  in  $F[x]$  which annihilates  $T$ .

*Proof.* Let  $V$  be finite dimensional.

Since  $T$  is a linear operator on  $V$ , we have  $T \in L(V, V)$ . We know that  $L(V, V)$  is a vector space of dimension  $n^2$ . Therefore the  $n^2 + 1$  elements  $I, T, T^2, \dots, T^{n^2}$  in  $L(V, V)$  are linearly dependant. Hence there are scalars not all of which are zero such that  $c_0I + c_1T + c_2T^2 + \dots + c_{n^2}T^{n^2} = 0$ . Let  $f$  be the polynomial  $f(x) = c_0 + c_1x + \dots + c_{n^2}x^{n^2}$ . Then  $f$  is a non zero polynomial in  $F[x]$  and  $f(T) = 0$ .  $\square$

Let us recall the definition,

**Definition 3.5.** If  $R$  is commutative ring. a subset  $U$  of  $R$  is called an ideal (ie ideal) in  $R$  if

1.  $U$  is a subgroup of  $R$  under addition.
2. For all  $u \in U, r \in R$  implies that  $ur$  and  $ru$  belongs to  $U$ .

If  $F$  is a field, the set  $F[x]$  is a commutative ring. (Actually  $F[x]$  is an integral domain).

**Lemma 3.5.** Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space over the field  $F$  and  $T$  is a linear operators on  $V$ , the set of all polynomials in  $F[x]$  which annihilates  $T$  is a non zero ideal in  $F[x]$ .

*Proof.* Let  $K$  be the set of all polynomials in  $F[x]$  which annihilates  $T$ . Thus  $K = \{f \in F[x] / f(T) = 0\}$ . Hence  $K$  is a set group of  $F[x]$  under the operation of addition Also

$$\begin{aligned} f, g \in K &\Rightarrow f(T) = 0, g(T) = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow (f - g)(T) = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow (f - g) \in K. \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $K$  is an ideal in  $F[x]$ . By remark 13,  $K$  is a non-zero ideal in  $F[x]$ .  $\square$

**Remark 14.** If  $M$  is a non-zero ideal in  $F[x]$ , then  $M$  is a principal ideal. There exists a unique monic polynomial  $p$  in  $M$  such that  $p$  generates  $M$ . This means that there exist a unique polynomial  $P$  in  $M$  such that

1.  $p$  is a monic polynomial.
2.  $p$  generates  $M$ . That is  $M = \langle p \rangle$  (that is  $f = pg$  for some  $g \in F[x]$ ).
3.  $p$  is of minimal degree in  $M$ . That is there exists no polynomial in  $M$  having degree less than the degree of  $p$ .

**Remark 15.** Let  $V$  be an  $n$  dimensional vector space over the field  $F$  and let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$ . The set of all polynomials in  $F[x]$  which annihilates  $T$  is a non-zero ideal in  $F[x]$ . By Remark 14, this ideal has a unique generator  $p$ . That is there exists a unique monic polynomial  $p$  of minimal degree in this ideal which generates this ideal. This polynomial  $p$  has the following property.

1. If  $f$  is any polynomial in  $F[x]$ , then  $f(T) = 0$  if and only if  $f = pg$  for some polynomial  $g \in F[x]$ .

We shall call this polynomial  $p$  the minimal polynomial for the linear operator  $T$ .



**Definition 3.6.** Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a finite dimensional vector space  $V$  over the field  $F$ . The minimal polynomial for  $T$  is the unique monic generator of the ideal of polynomials over  $F$ , which annihilates  $T$ .

If  $p$  is the minimal polynomial for  $T$ , Then  $p$  has the following properties.

1.  $p$  is a monic polynomial over  $F$ .
2.  $p(T) = 0$
3. No polynomial having degree less than the degree of  $p$  can annihilate  $T$ .
4. The polynomial  $f$  annihilate  $T$  if and only if  $f = pg$ , for some polynomial  $g \in F[x]$ .

**Definition 3.7.** If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix over the field  $F$ , the minimal polynomial for  $A$  is that unique monic generator of the ideal of polynomials over  $F$  which annihilates  $A$ .

If  $T$  is the linear operator which is represented in some ordered basis by the matrix  $A$ , then the minimal polynomial for  $T$  is same as the minimal polynomial of  $A$ .

**Theorem 3.3.** Let  $T$  be a linear operator on an  $n$  dimensional vector space  $V$  ( or let  $A$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix). The characteristic and minimal polynomial for  $T$  (or for  $A$ ) have the same roots except for multiplicities.

*Proof.* Let  $p$  be the minimal polynomial for  $T$ . Then  $p(T) = 0$ . Let  $c$  be a scalar in  $F$ . We have to prove that  $c$  is a root of the polynomial  $p$  if and only if  $c$  is a root of the characteristic polynomial of  $T$ . That is  $p(c) = 0$  if and only if  $c$  is a characteristic value of  $T$ . Suppose that  $p(c) = 0$ . Then  $p(x) = (x - c)q(x)$  where  $q$  is some polynomial. since degree of  $q(x)$  is less than the degree of  $p$ , by the definition of  $p$ , we have  $q(T) \neq 0$  choose a vector  $\beta$  such that  $q(T)\beta \neq 0$ . Let  $\alpha = q(T)\beta$ . Then

$$0 = q(T)\beta$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= (T - cI)q(T)\beta \\
&= (T - cI)\alpha.
\end{aligned}$$

Hence  $c$  is a characteristic value of  $T$ . conversely suppose that  $c$  is a characteristic value of  $T$ . Then there is a non zero vector  $\alpha$  in  $V$  such that  $T\alpha = c\alpha$ . By previous lemma,  $P(T)\alpha = p(c)\alpha$ . Since  $P(T) = 0$  and  $\alpha \neq 0$ , we have  $p(c) = 0$ . Hence the result.  $\square$

**Note 3.6.** Let  $T$  be a diagonalizable linear operator on a finite dimensional vector space  $V$ . Let  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  be the distinct characteristic values of  $T$ . Then the minimal polynomial for  $T$  is  $p(x) = (x - c_1)(x - c_2) \dots (x - c_k)$ .

*Proof.* Since  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  are the characteristic values of  $T$ , They are the roots of the characteristic polynomial for  $T$ . By the above theorem, the minimal polynomial and the characteristic polynomial have the same roots. Hence  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  are the roots of the minimal polynomial for  $T$ . The monic polynomial for  $T$ . The monic polynomial of minimal degree with roots  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$ .

If  $\alpha$  is a characteristic vector, then one of the operators  $(T - c_1I), \dots, (T - c_kI)$  sends  $\alpha$  into 0. Therefore  $(T - c_1I) \dots (T - c_kI)\alpha = 0$  for every characteristic vector  $\alpha$ . There is a basis for the underlying space which consists of characteristic vectors of  $T$ , hence  $p(T) = (T - c_1I) \dots (T - c_kI) = 0$  Thus  $p$  is a polynomial of minimal degree with roots  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  which annihilates  $T$ . Hence  $p$  is the minimal polynomial for  $T$ .  $\square$

**Example 36.** 1. Consider the linear operator  $T$  on  $R^3$ , which is represented in the standard ordered basis by the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 5 & -6 & -6 \\ -1 & 4 & 2 \\ 3 & -6 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$$

The linear operator  $T$  is diagonalizable. The characteristic polynomial for  $T$  is  $f = (x-1)(x-2)^2$ . Hence 1 and 2 are the distinct characteristic values of  $T$ . since  $T$  is diagonalizable, the minimal polynomial for  $T$  is  $(x-1)(x-2)$ . we can easily verify that  $(A-I)(A-2I) = 0$ . Note that here the minimal polynomial divides the characteristic polynomial.

2. Consider the linear operator  $T$  on  $R^3$  which is represented in the standard ordered basis by the Matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The characteristic polynomial for  $T$  is  $f = (x-1)(x-2)^2$  which is same as that of the above operator. Hence 1 and 2 are the roots of the characteristic polynomial. The linear operator  $T$  is not diagonalizable. So we cannot say that the minimal polynomial for  $T$  is  $(x-1)(x-2)$ . Since 1 and 2 are the roots of the characteristic polynomial, they are the roots of the minimal polynomial for  $T$ . So the minimal polynomial for  $T$  is of the form  $(x-1)^r(x-2)^k$ , where  $r \geq 1, k \geq 1$ .

First we check the polynomial  $(x-1)(x-2)$ .

We have  $(A-I)(A-2I) \neq 0$ . Hence  $(T-I)(T-2I) \neq 0$ . There fore the polynomial  $(x-1)(x-2)$  does not annihilate  $T$ . Hence  $(x-1)(x-2)$  is not the minimal polynomial for  $T$ . Therefore the minimal polynomial for  $T$  has degree at least 3. So the next choices for the minimal polynomial are  $(x-1)^2(x-2)$ ,  $(x-1)(x-2)^2$ . Here we can early verify that  $(T-I)(T-2I)^2 = 0$ . Hence  $(x-1)(x-2)^2$  is the minimal polynomial for  $T$ .

Note that here, the minimal polynomial for  $T$  is same as the characteristic polynomial for  $T$ .

3. Consider the linear operator  $T$  on  $R^2$  which is represented in the standard ordered basis by the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The characteristic polynomial for  $T$  is  $x^2 + 1$ . This polynomial has no roots in the field  $R$ . So we cannot find the minimal polynomial for  $T$  by concentrating on the matrix  $A$ . Consider the matrix  $A$  as a matrix over the field of complex numbers. Roots of the characteristic polynomial are  $i$  and  $-i$  over  $C$ . The roots of this minimal polynomial are  $i$  and  $-i$ , and hence the roots of the minimal polynomial for  $A$  are also  $i$  and  $-i$ . The lowest degree polynomial with roots  $i$  and  $-i$  is  $x^2 + 1$ . Also we can easily verify that  $A^2 + I = 0$ . Thus is the minimal polynomial for  $A$ . Hence the minimal polynomial for  $T$  is also  $x^2 + 1$ . Note that here also the characteristic and minimal polynomials are the same.

**Theorem 3.4.** (*Cayley Hamilton Theorem*) Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a finite dimensional vector space  $V$ . If  $f$  is the characteristic polynomial for  $T$ , then  $f(T) = 0$  in other words, the minimal polynomial for  $T$  divides the characteristic polynomial for  $T$ .

*Proof.* Let  $K$  be the set of all polynomials over the field  $F$  in the variable  $T$ . Then  $K$  is a commutative ring with unity.

Choose an ordered basis  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  for  $V$  and let  $A$  be the matrix of  $T$  in this ordered basis. Then

$$T(\alpha_i) = \sum_{j=1}^n A_{ij} \alpha_j, \quad 1 \leq i \leq n.$$

These operations can be written in the equivalent form

$$\sum_{j=1}^n (\delta_{ij} T - A_{ij} I) \alpha_j = 0, \quad 1 \leq i \leq n.$$

For  $1 \leq i \leq n$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq n$ , let

$$B_{ij} = \delta_{ij}T - A_{ij}I.$$

Thus we can write

$$\sum_{j=1}^n B_{ij}\alpha_j = 0, \quad \alpha_j = 0, \quad 1 \leq i \leq n.$$

Let  $B$  be the  $n \times n$  matrix with entries  $B_{ij}$ . Since  $f$  is the characteristic polynomial for  $T$ , we have  $f$  is the characteristic polynomial for  $A$ .

Therefore

$$f(x) = \det(xI - A) \quad (3.1)$$

$$= \det(\delta_{ij}x - A_{ji}) \quad (3.2)$$

Therefore

$$f(T) = \det(\delta_{ij}T - A_{ji}I) \quad (3.3)$$

$$= \det[B_{ij}] \quad (3.4)$$

$$= \det B. \quad (3.5)$$

We have to prove that  $f(T) = 0$ . To prove  $f(T)$  is the zero linear operator on  $V$ , it is enough to prove that  $f(T)\alpha_k = 0$  for all  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . So we shall prove that  $[\det(B)]\alpha_k = 0$  for all  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .

The vectors  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  Satisfies

$$\sum_{j=1}^n B_{ij}\alpha_j = 0, \quad , \quad 1 \leq i \leq n.$$

Let  $B^\sim = \text{Adj } B$ .

Since each  $B_{ki}^\sim$  is a linear operator on  $V$ , we have  $B_{ki}^\sim(\sum_{j=1}^n B_{ij}\alpha_j) = 0$ , for each pair  $k, i$  with  $1 \leq k \leq n$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq n$ . That is for each pair  $k, i$ , with  $1 \leq k, i \leq n$ ,

$$\sum_{j=1}^n B_{ki}^{\sim} B_{ij} \alpha_j = 0,$$

Summing on  $i$  we get,

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n B_{ki}^{\sim} B_{ij} \alpha_j = 0,$$

$$\sum_{j=1}^n \left( \sum_{i=1}^n B_{ki}^{\sim} B_{ij} \right) \alpha_j = 0, \quad 1 \leq k \leq n. \quad (3.6)$$

Since  $B^{\sim} = \text{Adj} B$ , we have

$$B^{\sim} B = (\det B) I.$$

Hence  $\sum_{i=1}^n B_{ki}^{\sim} B_{ij} = \delta_{kj} \det(B)$ . Hence from equation 3.6, we have  $\sum_{i=1}^n \delta_{kj} (\det B) \alpha_j = 0$ ,  $1 \leq k \leq n$ . That is  $\det B \alpha_k = 0$ ,  $1 \leq k \leq n$ . Hence the proof.  $\square$

**Remark 16.** By Theorems 3.3 and 3.4, the characteristic and minimal polynomials for an operator  $T$  have the same roots and the minimal polynomial divides the characteristic polynomial. Hence if  $f$  is the characteristic polynomial and  $p$  is the minimal polynomial and  $c_1, \dots, c_k$  are distinct characteristic values of  $T$  and if

$$f = (x - c_1)^{d_1} \dots (x - c_k)^{d_k}$$

then

$$P = (x - c_1)^{r_1} \dots (x - c_k)^{r_k}, \quad 1 \leq r_j \leq d_j.$$

**Example 37.** Let  $A$  be the  $4 \times 4$ (rational) matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The powers of  $A$  can be calculated as

$$A^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 & 2 \\ 2 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$A^3 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 4 & 0 & 4 \\ 4 & 0 & 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & 0 & 4 \\ 4 & 0 & 4 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = 4 \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus  $A^3 = 4A$ . And if  $p = x^3 - 4x = x(x+2)(x-2)$ , then  $p(A) = 0$ . The minimal polynomial for  $A$  must divide the polynomials  $p$ . That minimal polynomial for  $A$  is not of degree 1. Any monic polynomial of degree 1, is of the form  $(x+k)$ . If this polynomial is the minimal polynomial of  $A$ , there we must have  $A + KI = 0$ . That is  $A = kI$  so that  $A$  is a scalar multiple of the identity matrix which is not true. Hence the minimal polynomial for  $A$  is not of degree 1. So the candidates for the minimal polynomial are  $x(x-2)$ ,  $x(x+2)$ ,  $x^2 - 4$ . The three quadratic polynomials can be eliminated because it is obvious at a glance that  $A^2 \neq -2A$ ,  $A^2 \neq 2A$ ,  $A^2 \neq 4I$ . Hence  $p$  is the minimal polynomial for  $A$ . The roots of the minimal polynomial for  $A$  are 0, 2 and  $-2$  and roots of the characteristic polynomials are also 0, 2 and  $-2$ . Hence the factors of the characteristic polynomials for  $A$  are  $x$ ,  $x-2$ ,  $x+2$ . Since the characteristic polynomials for  $A$  is a 4th degree polynomial one of these factors must be repeated. We have 0, 2, and  $-2$  are the characteristic values of  $A$ . We have  $rank(A) = 2$ . Nullity of  $A = 2$ . Nullity of  $(T) = 2$ . Nullity  $(T - 0I) = 2$  Thus the characteristic space associated with the characteristic values 0 is 2 dimensional. Therefore if

$W_1$ ,  $W_2$ , and  $W_3$  are the space of  $A$  associated with the characteristic values 0, 2 and  $-2$  respectively, then  $\dim W_1 = 2$ , and hence  $\dim W_1 + \dim W_2 + \dim W_3 = 4$ . Hence  $A$  is diagonalizable. and  $d_1 = \dim W_1 = 2$ ,  $d_2 = \dim W_2 = 1$ ,  $d_3 = \dim W_3 = 1$ . Hence the characteristic polynomial for  $A$  is  $f = (x - 0)^{d_1}(x - 2)^{d_2}(x + 2)^{d_3} = x^2(x - 2)(x + 2) = x^2(x^2 - 4)$ .

Since  $A$  is diagonalizable,  $A$  is similar to the diagonal matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

### Exercises

1. Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space. What is the minimal polynomial for the identity operator on  $V$ ? What is the minimal polynomial for the zero operator?
2. Let  $a, b$ , and  $c$  be elements of a field  $F$ , and let  $A$  be the following  $3 \times 3$  matrix over  $F$ :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & c \\ 1 & 0 & b \\ 0 & 1 & a \end{bmatrix}.$$

Prove that the characteristic polynomial for  $A$  is  $x^3 - ax^2 - bx - c$  and that this is also the minimal polynomial for  $A$ .

3. Find a  $3 \times 3$  matrix for which the minimal polynomial is  $x^2$ .
4. Let  $A$  be the  $4 \times 4$  real matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ -2 & -2 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Show that the characteristic polynomial for  $A$  is  $x^2(x - 1)^2$  and that it is also the minimal polynomial.



### 3.3 Invariant Subspaces

In this section, we are analysing a linear operator. These ideas will help us to characterize diagonalizable operators in terms of their minimal polynomials.

**Definition 3.8.** *Let  $V$  be a vector space and  $T$  a linear operator on  $V$ . If  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ , we say that  $W$  is invariant under  $T$  if for each vector  $\alpha \in W$ , the vector  $T(\alpha)$  is in  $W$ . That is, if  $T(W)$  is contained in  $W$ .*

**Example 38.** 1. If  $T$  is any linear operator on  $V$ , then  $V$  is invariant under  $T$ , as is the zero subspace. The range of  $T$  and the null space of  $T$  are also invariant under  $T$ .

2. Let  $F$  be a field and let  $D$  be the differentiation operator on the space  $F[x]$  of polynomials over  $F$ . Let  $n$  be a positive integer and let  $W$  be the subspace of polynomials of degree not greater than  $n$ . Then  $W$  is invariant under  $D$ . This is just another way of saying that  $D$  is ‘degree decreasing’.

3. Here is a very useful generalization of Example 1. Let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$ . Let  $U$  be any linear operator on  $V$  which commutes with  $T$ . That is,  $TU = UT$ . Let  $W$  be the range of  $U$  and let  $N$  be the null space of  $U$ . Both  $W$  and  $N$  are invariant under  $T$ . If  $\alpha$  is in the range of  $U$ , say  $\alpha = U\beta$ , then  $T(\alpha) = T(U\beta) = U(T(\beta))$ . Then  $T(\alpha)$  is in the range of  $U$ . If  $\alpha \in N$ , then  $U(T(\alpha)) = T(U(\alpha)) = T(0) = 0$ , then  $T(\alpha)$  is in  $N$ .

4. Let  $T$  be the linear operator on  $R^2$  which is represented in the standard ordered basis by the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The characteristic polynomial is given by  $x^2 + 1$  and it has no roots in  $R$ . Hence  $T$  has no (real) characteristic values. The only subspace of  $R^2$  which are invariant under  $T$  are  $R^2$  and the zero subspace. Any other invariant subspace would necessarily have dimension 1. Suppose  $W$  is any other subspace of  $R^2$  which are invariant under  $T$ . Then  $W$  is one dimensional. Then there is a non-zero vector  $\alpha \in W$  such that every vector in  $W$  is a scalar multiple of  $\alpha$ . If  $W$  is invariant under  $T$ , we get  $T(\alpha) = c\alpha$  for some scalar  $c$ . This means that  $\alpha$  is a characteristic vector, but  $A$  has no real characteristic values.

**Remark 17.** 1. When the subspace  $W$  is invariant under a operator  $T$ , then  $T$  induces a linear operator  $T_W$  on the space  $W$ . The linear operator  $T_W$  is defined by  $T_W(\alpha) = T(\alpha)$ , for  $\alpha \in W$ , but  $T_W$  is quite a different object from  $T$  since its domain is  $W$  not  $V$ .

2. When  $V$  is finite-dimensional, the variance of  $W$  under  $T$  has a simple matrix interpretation. Let  $W$  be a subspace of  $V$  such that  $W$  is invariant under  $T$ . Let  $\mathcal{B}' = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r\}$  be a basis for  $W$  and let  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r, \alpha_{r+1}, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  be a basis for  $V$ . Let  $A = [T]_{\mathcal{B}}$ . Then  $T\alpha_j = \sum_{i=1}^n A_{ij}\alpha_i$ ,  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Since  $W$  is invariant under  $T$ , the vector  $T\alpha_j$  belongs to  $W$  for  $j = 1, 2, \dots, r$ . Hence  $T\alpha_1, \dots, T\alpha_r$  are linear combination of  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r$ . Thus  $T\alpha_j = \sum_{i=1}^r A_{ij}\alpha_i$ ,  $j = 1, 2, \dots, r$ . Thus  $A_{ij} = 0$  for  $i > r$ ,  $j \leq r$ . Hence the matrix  $A$  takes the block form

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} B & C \\ 0 & D \end{bmatrix}$$

where  $B$  is an  $r \times r$  matrix,  $C$  is an  $r \times (n - r)$  matrix, and  $D$  is an  $(n - r) \times (n - r)$  matrix. The matrix  $B$  is precisely the matrix of the induced operator  $T_W$  in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}'$ .

**Example 39.** 1. Find all invariant subspaces of the linear transformations  $T : R^2 \rightarrow R^2$  defined by  $T(x, y) = (x - y, 2x + 2y)$ . The matrix of the linear operator  $T$  in the standard ordered basis is given by

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The characteristic polynomial for  $T$  is given by  $x^2 - 3x + 4$ . Its roots are

$$x = \frac{3 + i\sqrt{7}}{2}, \frac{3 - i\sqrt{7}}{2}.$$

So the linear operator  $T$  has no real roots. That is characteristic polynomial has no characteristic roots. Hence as in the above example, the only subspace of  $R^2$  which are invariant under  $T$  are the zero subspace and  $R^2$ .

**Lemma 3.7.** *Let  $W$  be an invariant subspace for  $T$ . The characteristic polynomial for the restriction operator  $T_W$  divides the characteristic polynomial for  $T$ . The minimal polynomial for  $T_W$  divides the minimal polynomial for  $T$ .*

*Proof.* If  $\mathcal{B}' = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r\}$  is a basis for  $W$  and  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r, \alpha_{r+1}, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  is a basis for  $V$  and if  $A = [T]_{\mathcal{B}}$  and  $B = [T]_{\mathcal{B}'}$ , then we have  $A$  is in the block form

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} B & C \\ 0 & D \end{bmatrix},$$

where  $B$  is the  $r \times r$  matrix,  $C$  is  $r \times (n - r)$  matrix,  $D$  is  $(n - r) \times (n - r)$  matrix. The by the property of determination of matrices in the block form we have,  $\det(xI - A) = \det(xI - B)\det(xI - D)$ . since  $\det(xI - A)$  is the characteristic polynomial for  $T$  and  $\det(xI - B)$

is the characteristic polynomial for  $T_W$ , we can see that the characteristic polynomial for  $T_W$  divides the characteristic polynomial for  $T$ .

For  $k = 1, 2, \dots$  the  $k$ th power of  $A$  is also in the block form

$$A^k = \begin{bmatrix} B^k & C_k \\ 0 & D^k \end{bmatrix},$$

where  $C_k$  is some  $r \times (n - r)$  matrix. Hence any polynomial  $P$  we have  $f(A)$  is in the block form

$$f(A) = \begin{bmatrix} f(B) & C' \\ 0 & f(D) \end{bmatrix}$$

Hence  $f(A) = 0$  implies that  $f(B) = 0$ . In other words if  $f$  annihilates  $A$ ,  $f$  annihilates  $B$ . Since minimal polynomial for  $T$  annihilates  $A$ , minimal polynomial for  $T$  annihilates  $B$ . Hence the minimal polynomial for  $T_W$  divides the minimal polynomial for  $T$ .  $\square$

**Definition 3.9.** Let  $W$  be an invariant subspace for  $T$  and let  $\alpha$  be a vector in  $V$ . The  $T$ -**conductor of  $\alpha$  into  $W$**  is the set  $S_T(\alpha; W)$ , which consists of all polynomials  $g$  (over the scalar field) such that  $g(T)\alpha$  is in  $W$ .

We usually drop the subscript  $T$  and write  $S(\alpha; W)$  since the operator  $T$  is fixed throughout our discussions. It is the set of all polynomials  $g$  over the scalar field  $F$  such that the linear operator  $g(T)$  leads  $\alpha$  in to  $W$ . When  $W = \{0\}$ , the conductor  $S(\alpha; W)$  is called the  $T$ -annihilator of  $\alpha$ .

**Lemma 3.8.** If  $W$  is an invariant subspace for  $T$ , then  $W$  is invariant under every polynomial in  $T$ . Thus, for each  $\alpha$  in  $V$ , the conductor  $S(\alpha; W)$  is an ideal in  $F[x]$ .

*Proof.* If  $\beta$  is in  $W$ , then  $T(\beta)$  is in  $W$ . Since  $W$  is invariant under  $T$ , we have  $T(T(\beta))$  is in  $W$ . That is  $T^2(\beta) \in W$ . By induction,  $T^k(\beta) \in W$  for every  $k$ . Taking linear combination, we can see that  $W$  is invariant under

every polynomial in  $T$ . Now let  $f, g$  be any two polynomials in  $F[x]$ . Then  $f, g \in S(\alpha; W)$  and  $c \in F$ ,

$$f(T)\alpha \in W, \quad g(T)\alpha \in W \Rightarrow cf(T)\alpha + g(T)\alpha \in W \quad (3.7)$$

$$\Rightarrow [cf(T) + g(T)]\alpha \in W \quad (3.8)$$

$$\Rightarrow [(cf + g)(T)]\alpha \in W \quad (3.9)$$

$$\Rightarrow cf + g \in S(\alpha; W). \quad (3.10)$$

Hence  $S(\alpha; W)$  is a subspace of  $F[x]$ . Now  $f \in F[x]$  and  $g \in S(\alpha; W)$  implies that  $g(T)\alpha \in W$ . Hence  $f(T)[g(T)\alpha] \in W$ . Since  $W$  is invariant under every polynomial in  $T$ ,  $[f(T)g(T)]\alpha \in W$ . Then  $[fg(T)]\alpha \in W$ , which implies that  $fg \in S(\alpha; W)$ . Thus  $S(\alpha; W)$  is an ideal in  $F[x]$ .  $\square$

**Remark 18.** The unique monic generator of the ideal  $S(\alpha; W)$  is also called the  $T$ -conductor of  $\alpha$  into  $W$  ( the  $T$ -annihilator in case  $W = \{0\}$ ). The  $T$ -conductor of  $\alpha$  into  $W$  is the monic polynomial  $g$  of least degree such the  $g(T)\alpha$  is in  $W$ . A polynomial  $f$  is in  $S(\alpha; W)$  if and only if  $g$  divides  $f$ . Note that the conductor  $S(\alpha; W)$  always contains the minimal polynomial for  $T$ ; hence, every  $T$ -conductor divides the minimal polynomial for  $T$ .

As the first illustration of how to use the conductor  $S(\alpha; W)$ , we shall characterize triangulable operators. The linear operator  $T$  is called triangulable if there is an ordered basis in which  $T$  is represented by a triangular matrix.

**Lemma 3.9.** *Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space over the field  $F$ . Let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$  such that the minimal polynomial for  $T$  is a product of linear factors*

$$p = (x - c_1)^{r_1}(x - c_k)^{r_k}, \quad c_i \in F$$

Let  $W$  be a proper ( $W \neq V$ ) subspace of  $V$  which is invariant under  $T$ . There exists a vector  $\alpha \in V$  such that

1.  $\alpha$  is not in  $W$ ;
2.  $(T - cI)\alpha$  is in  $W$ , for some characteristic value  $c$  of the operator  $T$ .

*Proof.* What (a) and (b) say is that the  $T$ -conductor of  $\alpha$  into  $W$  is a linear polynomial. Let  $\beta$  be any vector in  $V$  which is not in  $W$ . Let  $g$  be the  $T$ -conductor of  $\beta$  into  $W$ . Then  $g$  divides  $p$ , the minimal polynomial for  $T$ . Since  $\beta$  is not in  $W$ , the polynomial  $g$  is not constant. Therefore,

$$g = (x - c_1)^{e_1}(x - c_k)^{e_k}, \quad c_i \in F$$

where at least one of the integers  $e_i$  is positive. Choose  $j$  so that  $e_j > 0$ . Then  $x - c_j$  divides  $g$

$$g = (x - c_k)h$$

. By the definition of  $g$ , the vector  $\alpha = h(T)\beta$  cannot be in  $W$ . But

$$\begin{aligned} (T - c_j I)\alpha &= (T - c_j I)h(T)\beta \\ &= g(T)\beta \end{aligned}$$

is in  $W$ . □

**Theorem 3.5.** *Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space over the field  $F$  and let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$ . Then  $T$  is triangulable if and only if the minimal polynomial for  $T$  is a product of linear polynomials over  $F$ .*

*Proof.* Suppose that the minimal polynomial factors

$$p = (x - c_1)^{r_1}(x - c_k)^{r_k}, \quad c_i \in F$$

By repeated application of the lemma 3.9, we shall arrive at an ordered basis  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  which the matrix representing  $T$  is upper-triangular:

$$[T]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ 0 & a_{22} & a_{23} & \dots & a_{2n} \\ 0 & 0 & a_{33} & \dots & a_{3n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix} \quad (3.11)$$

This means that

$$T\alpha_j = a_{1j}\alpha_1 + \dots + a_{jj}\alpha_j \quad 1 \leq j \leq n. \quad (3.12)$$

That is,  $T\alpha_j$  is in the subspace spanned by  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_j$ . To find  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$ , we start by applying the Lemma 3.9 to the subspace  $W = \{0\}$ , to obtain the vector  $\alpha_1$ . Then apply the lemma 3.9 to  $W_1$ , the space spanned by  $\alpha_1$  and we obtain  $W_2$ . Continue in that way. After  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  have been found, it is the triangular-type relations 3.12 for  $j = 1, \dots, i$  which ensure that the subspace spanned by  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  invariant under  $T$ .

If  $T$  is triangulable, it is evident that the characteristic polynomial for  $T$  has the form

$$f = (x - c_1)^{d_1} \dots (x - c_k)^{d_k}, \quad c_i \in F$$

Just look at the triangular matrix given by 3.11. The diagonal entries  $a_{11}, \dots, a_{nn}$  are the characteristic values, with  $c_i$  repeated  $d_i$  times. But, if  $f$  can be so factored, so can the minimal polynomial  $p$ , because it divides  $f$ . □

**Corollary 3.1.** *Let  $F$  be an algebraically closed field, for example: the complex number field. Every  $n \times n$  matrix over  $F$  is similar over  $F$  to a triangular matrix.*

*Proof.* Let  $A$  be any  $n \times n$  matrix over  $F$ . The minimal polynomial for  $A$  is a polynomial over  $F$ . Since  $F$  is algebraically closed field, the minimal polynomial can be factored into product of linear factors over  $F$ . Hence  $A$  is triangulable or  $A$  is similar over  $F$  to a triangular matrix.  $\square$

**Example 40.** 1. Let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $R^2$  which is represented in the standard ordered basis by

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Is  $T$  triangulable?

Solution: The characteristic polynomial for  $T$  is  $f = x^2 + 1$  and minimal polynomial for  $T$  is  $p = x^2 + 1$ . Then the polynomial can not be written as a product of linear polynomials over  $R$ . Hence  $T$  is not triangulable. (Note that if we consider  $T$  as a linear operator on  $C^2$ , then  $T$  is Triangulable.)

2. Show that the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

is not similar over  $R$  to a triangular matrix.

Solution: The characteristic polynomial for  $A$  is  $f = (x-1)(x-2)+2 = x^2-3x+4$ . Therefore  $f$  has no root in  $R$ . Hence minimal polynomial has no root in  $R$ . Therefore the minimal polynomial for  $A$  is  $p = x^2-3x+4$ . So the minimal polynomial can not be factored into a product of linear polynomials in  $R$ . Hence  $A$  is not similar to a triangular matrix.

3. Let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $R^3$  which is represented in the standard



basis by the matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Show that  $T$  is not diagonalizable but  $T$  is triangulable.

Solution: The characteristic polynomial is given by  $(x - 1)(x - 2)^2$ . The minimal polynomial is  $(x - 1)(x - 2)^2$ . Let  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  be the characteristic spaces associated with the characteristic values 1 and 2 respectively. Here  $\dim W_1 + \dim W_2 = 2 \neq 3 (= \dim V)$ . Hence  $T$  is not diagonalizable.

minimal polynomial for  $T$  is

$$(x - 1)(x - 2)^2 = (x - 1)(x - 2)(x - 2),$$

a product of linear factors. Hence the operator associated with the matrix  $A$  is triangulable.

**Theorem 3.6.** *Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space over the field  $F$  and let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$ . Then  $T$  is diagonalizable if and only if the minimal polynomial for  $T$  has the form*

$$p = (x - c_1)(x - c_k),$$

where  $c_i$  are distinct elements of  $F$ .

*Proof.* We have noted earlier that, if  $T$  is diagonalizable, its minimal polynomial is a product of distinct linear factors. Conversely assume that the minimal polynomial for  $T$  has the form

$$p = (x - c_1)(x - c_k),$$

where  $c_i$  are distinct elements of  $F$ . Let  $W$  be the subspace spanned by all of the characteristic vectors of  $T$ . Then  $W = W_1 + W_2 + \dots + W_k$  Where  $W_i$  is the characteristic space associated with the characteristic value  $c_i$ . We have to prove that  $W = V$ .

Suppose  $W \neq V$ . Then  $W$  is a proper subspace of  $V$  which is invariant under  $T$ . Then by applying Lemma 3.9, choose a vector  $\alpha$  not in  $W$  and a characteristic value  $c_j$  of  $T$  such that the vector  $\beta = (T - c_j I)\alpha$  is in  $W$ . Since  $\beta \in W$ , and since  $W = W_1 + W_2 + \dots + W_k$ , we have  $\beta = \beta_1 + \beta_2 + \dots + \beta_k$ , where  $\beta_i \in W_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ . Then  $T\beta_i = c_i\beta_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ . Then for any polynomial  $h$  we have  $h(T)\beta_i = h(c_i)\beta_i$ . Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} h(T)\beta &= h(T)\beta_1 + h(T)\beta_2 + \dots + h(T)\beta_k \\ &= h(c_1)\beta_1 + h(c_2)\beta_2 + \dots + h(c_k)\beta_k \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$h(T)\beta \in W. \quad (3.13)$$

We have  $p = (x - c_j)q$  where  $q$  is a polynomial. Also  $q - q(c_j) = (x - c_j)h$  where  $h$  is a polynomial. Now

$$\begin{aligned} q(T)\alpha - q(c_j)\alpha &= h(T)(T - c_j I)\alpha \\ &= h(T)\beta \end{aligned}$$

This implies that

$$q(T)\alpha - q(c_j)\alpha = h(T)\beta \in W. \quad (3.14)$$

Since  $p$  is the minimal polynomial for  $T$  we have  $p(T) = 0$ . Therefore  $0 = P(T)\alpha = (T - c_j I)q(T)\alpha$ . This implies that  $q(T)\alpha$  is a characteristic vector of  $T$  associated with the characteristic value  $c_j$ . Hence from equation 2.14,  $q(T)\alpha \in W$ . Since  $\alpha \notin W$ , it follows that  $q(c_j) = 0$ . Since  $p = (x - c_j)q$ ,

this contradicts the fact that  $p$  has distinct roots. Hence  $W = V$ . Thus  $T$  is diagonalizable.  $\square$

The above theorem 3.6 is useful in a computational way. Suppose we have a linear operator  $T$ , represented by the matrix  $A$  in some ordered basis, and we wish to know if  $T$  is diagonalizable. We compute the characteristic polynomial  $f$ . If we can factor  $f$ :

$$f = (x - c_1)^{d_1} \dots (x - c_k)^{d_k}$$

we have two different methods for determining whether or not  $T$  is diagonalizable. One method is to see whether (for each  $i$ ) we can find  $d_i$  independent characteristic vectors associated with the characteristic value  $c_i$ . The other method is to check whether or not

$$(T - c_1 I) \dots (T - c_k I)$$

is the zero operator.

Theorem 3.5 provides a different proof of the Cayley-Hamilton theorem. That theorem is easy for a triangular matrix. Hence, via Theorem 3.5, we obtain the result for any matrix over an algebraically closed field. Any field is a subfield of an algebraically closed field. If one knows that result, one obtains a proof of the Cayley-Hamilton theorem for matrices over any field.

### Exercises

- Let  $T$  be the linear operator on  $R^2$ , the matrix of which in the standard ordered basis is
 
$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$
  - Prove that the only subspaces of  $R^2$  invariant under  $T$  are  $R^2$  and the zero subspace.
  - If  $U$  is the linear operator on  $C^2$ , the matrix of which in the standard ordered basis is  $A$ , show that  $U$  has 1-dimensional invariant subspaces.
- Let  $W$  be an invariant subspace for  $T$ . Prove that the minimal polynomial for the restriction operator  $T_W$  divides the minimal polynomial for  $T$ , without referring to matrices.
- Let  $c$  be a characteristic value of  $T$  and let  $W$  be the space of characteristic vectors associated with the characteristic value  $c$ . What is the restriction operator  $T_W$ ?

4. Let  $T$  be a diagonalizable linear operator on the  $n$ -dimensional vector space  $V$ , and let  $W$  be a subspace which is invariant under  $T$ . Prove that the restriction operator  $T_W$  is diagonalizable.  $T$  is diagonalizable if and only if  $T$  is annihilated by some polynomial over  $C$  which has distinct roots.
5. Let  $T$  be linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space over the field of complex numbers. Prove that  $T$  is diagonalizable if and only if  $T$  is annihilated by some polynomial over  $C$  which has distinct roots.
6. Let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$ . If every subspace of  $V$  is invariant under  $T$ , then  $T$  is a scalar multiple of the identity operator.

### 3.4 Direct- Sum Decompositions

In this section we are trying to decompose the underlying space  $V$  into a sum of invariant subspaces for  $T$  such that the restriction operators on those subspaces are simple.

**Definition 3.10.** Let  $W_1, \dots, W_k$  be subspaces of the vector space  $V$ . We say that  $W_1, \dots, W_k$  are independent if  $\alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_k = 0$ ,  $\alpha_i \in W_i$  implies that each  $\alpha_i$  is 0.

For  $k = 2$ , the meaning of independence is 0 intersection, i.e.,  $W_1$  and  $W_2$  are independent if and only if  $W_1 \cap W_2 = 0$ . If  $k > 2$ , the independence of  $W_1, \dots, W_k$  says much more than  $W_1 \cap \dots \cap W_k = 0$ . It says that each  $W_j$  intersects the sum of the other subspaces  $W_i$  only in the zero vector. The significance of independence is this. Let  $W = W_1 + \dots + W_k$  be the subspace spanned by  $W_1, \dots, W_k$ . Each vector  $\alpha$  in  $W$  can be expressed as a sum

$$\alpha = \alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_k, \quad \alpha_i \in W_i$$

. If  $W_1, \dots, W_k$  are independent, then that expression for  $\alpha$  is unique; for if

$$\alpha = \beta_1 + \dots + \beta_k, \quad \beta_i \in W_i$$

, then

$$0 = (\alpha_1 - \beta_1) + \dots + (\alpha_k - \beta_k),$$

Hence  $\alpha_i - \beta_i = 0$ ,  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$ . Thus when  $W_1, \dots, W_k$  are independent we can operate with vectors in  $W$  as  $k$ -tuples  $(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k)$ ,  $\alpha_i \in W_i$  in the same way as we operate with vectors in  $R^k$  as  $k$ -tuples of numbers.

**Lemma 3.10.** *Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space. Let  $W_1, \dots, W_k$  be subspaces of  $V$  and let  $W = W_1 + \dots + W_k$ . The following are equivalent.*

1.  $W_1, \dots, W_k$  are independent.
2. For each  $j$  such that  $2 \leq j \leq k$ , we have  $W_j \cap (W_1 + \dots + W_{j-1}) = \{0\}$ .
3. If  $\mathcal{B}$  is an ordered basis for  $W_i$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq k$ , then the sequence

$$\mathcal{B} = (\mathcal{B}, \dots, \mathcal{B})$$

*an ordered basis for  $W$ .*

*Proof.* (1)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (2).

Assume (1). Suppose that  $W_1, \dots, W_k$  are independent. For each  $j$ ,  $2 \leq j \leq k$ , we have  $\alpha \in W_j \cap (W_1 + \dots + W_{j-1})$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha \in W_j \cap (W_1 + \dots + W_{j-1}) &\Rightarrow \alpha \in W_j \text{ and } \alpha \in (W_1 + \dots + W_{j-1}) \\ &\Rightarrow \alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_{j-1}, \quad \alpha_i \in W_i \\ &\Rightarrow \alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_{j-1} - \alpha + 0 + \dots + 0 = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \alpha_1 = 0, \alpha_2 = 0, \dots, \alpha_{j-1} = 0, \alpha = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Since  $W_1, W_2, \dots, W_k$  are independent,  $\alpha = 0$ . Hence  $W_j \cap (W_1 + \dots + W_{j-1}) = \{0\}$ .

Conversely suppose that for each  $j$ ,  $2 \leq j \leq k$ , we have  $W_j \cap (W_1 + \dots + W_{j-1}) = \{0\}$ .

Suppose that  $\alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_k = 0$ , where  $\alpha_i \in W_i$ . Let  $j$  be the largest index such that  $\alpha \neq 0$ . Therefore  $\alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_k = 0$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_j = 0 &\Rightarrow \alpha_j = -\alpha_1 - \alpha_2 - \dots - \alpha_{j-1} \\ &\in W_j \cap (W_1 + \dots + W_{j-1}) = \{0\} \\ &\Rightarrow \alpha_j = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\Rightarrow \alpha_i = 0 \text{ for all } i.$$

Hence  $W_1, W_2, \dots, W_k$  are independent. Hence (1) and (2) are equivalent. To prove (1)  $\rightarrow$  (3). Suppose that  $W_1, W_2, \dots, W_k$  are independent. Let  $\mathcal{B}_i$  be an ordered basis for  $W_i$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq k$ . Let

$$\mathcal{B} = \{\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2, \dots, \mathcal{B}_k\}.$$

Any linear relation between vectors of  $\mathcal{B}$  is of the form  $\beta_1 + \beta_2 + \dots + \beta_k = 0$  where  $\beta_i$  is a linear combination of vectors in  $\mathcal{B}_i$  for each  $i$ . Then  $\beta_i \in W_i$  for each  $i$ .

Since  $W_1, W_2, \dots, W_k$  are independent, we have  $\beta_i = 0$  for each  $i$ .

Since  $\mathcal{B}_i$  is linearly independent it follows that there is only a trivial linear relation between the vectors of  $\mathcal{B}$ . Hence  $\mathcal{B}$  is linearly independent. Since each  $\mathcal{B}_i$  spans  $W_i$  for each  $W_i$ ,  $\mathcal{B}$  spans  $W_1 + W_2 + \dots + W_k$ . Thus  $\mathcal{B}$  is a basis for  $W$ .

Now to prove Assume that if  $\mathcal{B}_i$  is an ordered basis of  $W_i$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq k$ , then  $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathcal{B}_1, \mathcal{B}_2, \dots, \mathcal{B}_k\}$  is an ordered basis of  $W_1 + W_2 + \dots + W_k$ . Let  $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \dots + \alpha_k = 0$  where  $\alpha_i \in W_i$ . To prove that each  $\alpha_i = 0$ . Since  $\mathcal{B}_i$  is an ordered basis of  $W_i$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq k$ , each  $\alpha_i$  is a linear combination of vectors in  $\mathcal{B}_i$ . Hence  $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \dots + \alpha_k$  is a linear combination of vectors in  $\mathcal{B}$ . Since  $\mathcal{B}$  is linearly independent, it follows that each coefficient of this linear combination is *zero*. Hence  $\alpha_i = 0$  for each  $i$ . Hence the result.

□

If any of the conditions of the last Lemma hold, we say that the sum  $W_1 + W_2 + \dots + W_k$  is direct or that  $W$  is the direct sum of  $W_1, W_2, \dots, W_k$  and we write

$$W = W_1 \oplus \dots \oplus W_k.$$

**Example 41.** 1. Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space over the field

$F$  and let  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  be any basis for  $V$ . If  $W_i$  is the one-dimensional subspace spanned by  $\alpha_i$ , then  $V = W_1 \oplus \dots \oplus W_n$

2. Let  $n$  be a positive integer and  $F$  be a subfield of the complex numbers and let  $V$  be the space of all  $n \times n$  matrices over  $F$ . Let  $W_1$  be the subspace of all symmetric matrices (Matrices with  $A^t = A$ ). Let  $W_2$  be the subspace of all skew-symmetric matrices (Matrices with  $A^t = -A$ ). Then  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$ .

$$\begin{aligned} A &= A_1 + A_2 \\ A_1 &= \frac{1}{2}(A + A^t) \\ A_2 &= \frac{1}{2}(A - A^t). \end{aligned}$$

3. Let  $T$  be any linear operator on a finite dimensional space  $V$ . Let  $c_1, \dots, c_k$  be the distinct characteristic values of  $T$  and let  $W_i$  be the characteristic spaces associated with the characteristic values  $c_i$ . Then  $W_1, \dots, W_k$  are independent. If  $T$  is diagonalizable, then  $V = W_1 \oplus \dots \oplus W_k$ .

**Definition 3.11.** If  $V$  is a vector space, a projection of  $V$  is linear operator  $E$  on  $V$  such that  $E^2 = E$ .

For example, Consider the operator on  $R^2$  given by  $E(x_1, x_2) = (x_1, 0)$ . Then  $E^2(x_1, x_2) = E(E(x_1, x_2)) = E(x_1, 0) = (x_1, 0) = E(x_1, x_2)$ .  $E$  is a projection of  $R^2$ .

**Properties of  $E$**  Suppose that  $E$  is a projection. Let  $R$  be the range of  $E$  and  $N$  be the nullspace of  $E$ .

1. vector  $\beta \in R$  if and only if  $E\beta = \beta$ .

*Proof.* For let  $\beta \in R$ . Then  $\beta = E\alpha$  for some  $\alpha \in V$ . Then

$$E\beta = E(E\alpha) = E^2\alpha = E\alpha = \beta.$$

Thus  $E\beta = \beta$ .

Suppose  $E\beta = \beta$ , then  $\beta$  is in the range of  $E$ .  $\square$

2.  $V = R \oplus N$

*Proof.* Let  $\alpha \in V$ . Let  $E$  denotes the projection, then  $E^2 = E$ . Then  $E\alpha \in R$ . Now

$$E(\alpha - E\alpha) = E(\alpha) - E^2\alpha = E(\alpha) - E(\alpha) = 0.$$

This implies that  $\alpha - E\alpha \in N$ .

$$\alpha = E\alpha - E\alpha + \alpha$$

where  $E\alpha \in R$  and  $\alpha - E\alpha \in N$ . Thus  $V = R + N$ . Now assume  $R \cap N \neq \phi$ , let  $\alpha \in R \cap N$ . Then  $\alpha \in R$  and  $\alpha \in N$ . Thus  $\alpha \in R$  if and only if  $\alpha = E\alpha$ . We have  $\alpha \in N$  if and only if  $E\alpha = 0$ . This implies that  $\alpha = 0$ . Thus  $R \cap N = \phi$ . Thus we can conclude that  $V = R \oplus N$ .  $\square$

3. The unique expression for  $\alpha$  as a sum of vectors in  $R$  and  $N$  is given by

$$\alpha = E\alpha - E\alpha + \alpha$$

where  $E\alpha \in R$  and  $\alpha - E\alpha \in N$ .

From (1), (2) and (3) it is easy to see the following:

If  $R$  and  $N$  are subspaces of  $V$  such that  $V = R \oplus N$ , there is one and only one projection operator  $E$  which has range  $R$  and nullspace  $N$ . That operator  $E$  is called the projection on  $R$  along  $N$ .

**Theorem 3.7.** *If  $V = W_1 \oplus \dots \oplus W_k$ , then there exists  $k$  linear operators  $E_1, \dots, E_k$  on  $V$  such that*

(i). *each  $E_i$  is a projection.*

(ii).  *$E_i E_j = 0$  if  $i \neq j$*



(iii).  $I = E_1 + \dots + E_k$

(iv). the range of  $E_i$  is  $W_i$ .

Conversely if  $E_1, \dots, E_k$  are  $k$  linear operators which satisfy the conditions (i), (ii) and (iii) and if we let  $W_i$  be the range of  $E_i$ , then  $V = W_1 \oplus \dots \oplus W_k$ .

*Proof.* Assume that  $V = W_1 \oplus \dots \oplus W_k$ . For each  $j$ , we have to define an operator  $E_j$  on  $V$ . Let  $\alpha = \alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_n \in V$  with  $\alpha_i \in W_i$ . Define  $E_j(\alpha) = \alpha_j$ . Then  $E_j$  is a function from  $V$  to  $V$  and is well defined. Since  $\alpha_j \in W_j$ ,  $E_j(\alpha) \in W_j$ . That is Range of  $E_j$  is  $W_j$ . Then  $E_j(c\alpha + \beta) = c\alpha_j + \beta_j = cE_j(\alpha) + E_j(\beta)$ . Thus  $E$  is linear. Then

$$E_j^2(\alpha) = E_j(E_j(\alpha)) = E_j(\alpha_j) = \alpha_j = E_j(\alpha).$$

The null space of  $E_j$  is the set of all  $\alpha$  such that  $E_j(\alpha) = 0$ . That is the set of all  $\alpha$  such that  $\alpha_j = 0$ . That is  $\alpha$  is actually a sum of vectors from the spaces  $W_i$  with  $i \neq j$ . That is the null space of  $E_j$  is the subspace

$$(W_1 + \dots + W_{j-1} + W_{j+1} + \dots + W_k).$$

We have  $E_j(\alpha) = \alpha_j$ . Then  $\alpha = E_1(\alpha) + E_2(\alpha) + \dots + E_k(\alpha)$  for each  $\alpha \in V$ . That means

$$I = E_1 + E_2 + \dots + E_k.$$

If  $i \neq j$ , then range of  $E_j$  is the subspace  $W_j$  which is contained in the null space of  $E_i$ . Then  $E_i(E_j(\alpha)) = E_i(\alpha_j) = 0$ . That means  $E_i E_j = 0$  if  $i \neq j$ .

Conversely assume that  $E_1, \dots, E_k$  are  $k$  linear operators which satisfy the conditions (i), (ii) and (iii) and let  $W_i$  be the range of  $E_i$ . Let  $\alpha \in V$ . Then by condition (iii),

$$\alpha = E_1(\alpha) + \dots + E_k(\alpha), \tag{3.15}$$

and  $W_i$  be the range of  $E_i$  implies that  $\alpha \in W_1 + \dots + W_k$ . This expression for  $\alpha$  is unique because if

$$\alpha = \alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_k \quad (3.16)$$

with  $\alpha_i \in W_i$ , say  $\alpha_i = E_i\beta_i$ , then using condition (i) and (ii) we have

$$\begin{aligned} E_j\alpha &= \sum_{i=1}^k E_j\alpha_i \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^k E_jE_i\beta_i \\ &= E_j^2\beta_j \\ &= E_j\beta_j \\ &= \alpha_j. \end{aligned}$$

That is the expression for  $\alpha$  in 3.15 and 3.16 are the same. Thus  $V$  is the direct sum of the  $W_i$ .  $\square$

### Exercises

1. Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional vector space and let  $W_1$  be any subspace of  $V$ . Prove that there is a subspace  $W_2$  of  $V$  such that  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$ .
2. Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space and let  $W_1, \dots, W_k$  be subspaces of  $V$  such that  $V = W_1 + \dots + W_k$  and  $\dim V = \dim W_1 + \dots + \dim W_k$ . Prove that  $V = W_1 \oplus \dots \oplus W_k$ .
3. Find a projection  $E$  which projects  $\mathbb{R}^2$  onto the subspace spanned by  $(1, -1)$  along the subspace spanned by  $(1, 2)$ .
4. If  $E$  is a projection on  $R$  along  $N$  then  $I - E$  is the projection on  $N$  along  $R$ .
5. Let  $E_1, \dots, E_k$  be operators on the space  $V$  such that  $E_1 + \dots + E_k = I$ .
  - (i) Prove that if  $E_iE_j = 0$  for  $i \neq j$ , then  $E_i^2 = E_i$  for each  $i$ .
  - (ii) When  $k = 2$ , prove the converse of (i). That is  $E_1 + E_2 = I$  and  $E_1^2 = E_1, E_2^2 = E_2$ , then  $E_1E_2 = 0$ .

### 3.5 Invariant Direct Sums

In this section we study the direct sum decomposition  $V = W_1 \oplus \dots \oplus W_k$ , where each of the subspaces  $W_i$  is invariant under some given linear operator  $T$ . Given a decomposition of  $V$   $T$  induces a linear operator  $T_i$  on each  $W_i$  by restriction. Thus  $T$  acts on  $V$  as follows. If  $\alpha \in V$ , we have unique vectors  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_k$  with  $\alpha_i \in W_i$  such that

$$\alpha = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \dots + \alpha_k,$$

then

$$T\alpha = T_1\alpha_1 + T_2\alpha_2 + \dots + T_k\alpha_k.$$

Then we say that  $T$  is the direct sum of the operators  $T_1, T_2, \dots, T_k$ . Here  $T_i$  are not linear operators on the space  $V$  but on the various subspaces  $W_i$ .

**Theorem 3.8.** *Let  $T$  be a linear operator on the space  $V$ , and let  $W_1, \dots, W_k$  and  $E_1, \dots, E_k$  be as in Theorem 3.7. Then a necessary and sufficient condition that each subspace  $W_i$  be invariant under  $T$  is that  $T$  commute with each of the projections  $E_i$ . That is*

$$TE_i = E_iT, \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, k.$$

*Proof.* Suppose that each subspace  $W_i$  be invariant under  $T$ . Let  $\alpha \in V$ . Then

$$\alpha = E_1\alpha + \dots + E_k\alpha$$

$$T\alpha = TE_1\alpha + \dots + TE_k\alpha.$$

Since  $E_i\alpha$  is in  $W_i$ , which is invariant under  $T$ , we have  $TE_i\alpha = E_i\beta_i$  for some vector  $\beta_i$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} E_jTE_i\alpha &= E_jE_i\beta_i \\ &= \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } i \neq j \\ E_j\beta_j & \text{if } i = j. \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$E_jT\alpha = E_jTE_1\alpha + \dots + E_jTE_k\alpha$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= E_j \beta_j \\
&= TE_j \alpha
\end{aligned}$$

This holds for each  $\alpha \in V$ , so  $E_j T = TE_j$ .

Conversely suppose that  $T$  commutes with each  $E_i$ . Let  $\alpha$  be in  $W_j$ . Then  $E_j \alpha = \alpha$ , and

$$T\alpha = T(E_j \alpha) = E_j(T\alpha).$$

Then  $T\alpha$  is in the range of  $E_j$ . But range of  $E_j$  is  $W_j$ . Thus  $T\alpha$  is in  $W_j$ . Hence  $W_j$  is invariant under  $T$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 3.9.** *Let  $T$  be a linear operator on a finite dimensional space  $V$ . If  $T$  is diagonalizable and if  $c_1, \dots, c_k$  are the distinct characteristic values of  $T$ , then there exist linear operators  $E_1, \dots, E_k$  on  $V$  such that*

(i)  $T = c_1 E_1 + \dots + c_k E_k$ ;

(ii)  $I = E_1 + \dots + E_k$

(iii)  $E_i E_j = 0, i \neq j$

(iv)  $E_i^2 = E_i$

(v) *the range of  $E_i$  is the characteristic space for  $T$  associated with  $c_i$ .*

*Conversely if there exist  $k$  distinct scalars  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  and  $k$  non-zero linear operators  $E_1, \dots, E_k$  which satisfy conditions (i), (ii) and (iii), then  $T$  is diagonalizable,  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  are distinct characteristic values of  $T$  and conditions (iv) and (v) are satisfied also.*

*Proof.* Suppose that  $T$  is diagonalizable, with distinct characteristic values  $c_1, \dots, c_k$ . Let  $W_i$  be the space of characteristic vectors associated with the characteristic value  $c_i$ . As we have seen,  $V = W_1 \oplus \dots \oplus W_k$ . Let  $E_1, \dots, E_k$

be the projections associated with this decomposition, as in Theorem 9. Then (ii),(iii),(iv) and (v) are satisfied. To verify (i), proceed as follows. For each  $\alpha \in V$ ,  
Now suppose that we are given a linear operator  $T$  along with distinct scalars  $c_i$  and non-zero operators  $E_i$  which satisfy (i),(ii) and (iii). For each  $\alpha \in V$ ,

$$\alpha = E_1\alpha + \dots + E_k\alpha$$

and so

$$T\alpha = TE_1\alpha + \dots + TE_k\alpha = c_1E_1\alpha + \dots + c_kE_k\alpha.$$

In other words

$$T = c_1E_1 + \dots + c_kE_k$$

Now suppose that we are given a linear operator  $T$  along with distinct scalars  $c_i$  and non-zero operators  $E_i$  which satisfy (i), (ii) and (iii). Since  $E_iE_j = 0$  when  $i \neq j$ , we multiply both sides of  $I = E_1 + \dots + E_k$  by  $E_i$  and obtain immediately  $E_i^2 = E_i$ . Multiplying  $T = c_1E_1 + \dots + c_kE_k$  by  $E_i$ , we then have

$$TE_i = c_1E_iE_1 + \dots + c_kE_iE_k = c_iE_i.$$

That is  $TE_i = c_iE_i \Rightarrow (T - c_iI)E_i = 0$ . Now let  $\beta \in$  the range of  $E_i$ . Then  $\beta = E_i(\alpha)$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} c_iE_i(\alpha) = TE_i(\alpha) &\Rightarrow c_i\beta = T\beta \\ &\Rightarrow (T - c_iI)\beta = 0 \\ &\Rightarrow \beta \in \text{null space of } T - c_iI. \end{aligned}$$

This means that any vector in the range of  $E_i$  is in the null space of  $T - c_iI$ . Since we have assumed  $E_i \neq 0$ , this proves that there is a non-zero vector in the null space of  $T - c_iI$ . That is  $c_i$  is a characteristic value of  $T$ . Furthermore, the  $c_i$  are all of the characteristic values of  $T$ , for if  $c$  is any scalar, then

$$T - cI = c_1E_1 + \dots + c_kE_k - cI = (c_1 - c)E_1 + \dots + (c_k - c)E_k.$$

Thus if  $(T - cI)\alpha = 0$ , we must have  $(c_i - c)E_i\alpha = 0$ . If  $\alpha$  is not the zero vector, then  $E_i\alpha \neq 0$  for some  $i$ , so that for this  $i$  we have  $c_i - c = 0$ .

Every non-zero vector in the range of  $E_i$  is a characteristic vector of  $T$ , and  $I = E_1 + \dots + E_k$  shows that these characteristic values span  $V$ . Thus  $T$  is diagonalizable.

Now we have to prove that the null space of  $T - c_iI$  is the range of  $E_i$ . If

$$\begin{aligned}
 \alpha \in N(T - c_iI) &\Rightarrow (T - c_iI)\alpha = 0 \\
 &\Rightarrow T\alpha = c_i\alpha \\
 &\Rightarrow (c_1E_1 + \dots + c_kE_k)\alpha = c_i\alpha \\
 &\Rightarrow (c_1 - c_i)E_1\alpha + \dots + (c_k - c_i)E_k\alpha = 0 \\
 &\Rightarrow (c_j - c_i)E_j\alpha = 0 \text{ for each } j \\
 &\Rightarrow E_j\alpha = 0, j \neq i.
 \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\alpha = E_1\alpha + \dots + E_k\alpha$ , and  $E_j\alpha = 0$  for  $j \neq i$ , we have  $\alpha = E_i\alpha$  which proves that  $\alpha$  is in the range of  $E_i$ .  $\square$

### Exercises

1. Let  $E$  be a projection of  $V$  and let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$ . Prove that the range of  $E$  is invariant under  $T$  if and only if  $ETE = TE$ . Prove that both the range and null space of  $E$  are invariant under  $T$  if and only if  $ET = TE$ .

2. Let  $T$  be the linear operator on  $R^2$ , the matrix of which in the standard ordered basis is

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Let  $W_1$  be the subspace of  $R^2$  spanned by the vector  $e_1 = (1, 0)$ . Then

- a) Prove that  $W_1$  is invariant under  $T$ .
  - b) Prove that there is no subspace  $W_2$  which is invariant under  $T$  and which is complementary to  $W_1$ :  $R^2 = W_1 \oplus W_2$ .
3. Let  $T$  be linear operator on a finite-dimensional vector space  $V$ . Let  $R$  be the range of  $T$  and let  $N$  be the null space of  $T$ . Prove that  $R$

and  $N$  are independent if and only if  $V = R \oplus N$ . 3. Let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$ . Suppose  $V = W_1 \oplus \dots \oplus W_k$ , where each  $W_i$  is invariant under  $T$ . Let  $T_i$  be the induced (restriction) operator on  $W_i$ .

1. Prove that  $\det(T) = \det(T_1) + \dots + \det(T_k)$ .
  2. Prove that the characteristic polynomial for  $f$  is the product of the characteristic polynomials for  $f_1, \dots, f_k$ .
  3. Prove that the minimal polynomial for  $T$  is the least common multiple of the minimal polynomials for  $T_1, T_2, \dots, T_k$ .
4. Let  $T$  be a linear operator on  $V$  which commutes with every projection operator on  $V$ . What can you say about  $T$ ?

# Chapter 4

## Inner Product Spaces

Here we study vector spaces in which it makes sense to speak of the length of a vector and the angle between two vectors. We will do this by introducing a scalar valued function on pairs of vectors known as inner product.

### 4.1 Inner Products

An inner product on a vector space is a function with properties similar to the dot product in  $R^3$ . And in terms of such an inner product one can also define length and angle. In this section we discuss the definition and examples of inner products and establish a few basic properties of inner products. Then we discuss length and orthogonality.

**Definition 4.1.** *Let  $F$  be the field of real numbers or the field of complex numbers, and  $V$  be a vector space over  $F$ . An **inner product** on  $V$  is a function which assigns to each ordered pair of vectors  $\alpha, \beta \in V$  a scalar  $(\alpha|\beta) \in F$  in such a way that for all  $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$  in  $V$  and all scalars  $c$*

1.  $(\alpha + \beta|\gamma) = (\alpha|\gamma) + (\beta|\gamma);$
2.  $(c\alpha|\beta) = c(\alpha|\beta);$
3.  $(\beta|\alpha) = \overline{(\alpha|\beta)},$  the bar denotes conjugation;



4.  $(\alpha|\alpha) > 0$  if  $\alpha \neq 0$ .

From the above definition, we can see that the above conditions (1), (2) and (3) imply that

$$(\alpha|(c\beta + \gamma)) = \bar{c}(\alpha|\beta) + (\alpha|\gamma) \quad (4.1)$$

*Proof.*

$$\begin{aligned} (\alpha|(c\beta + \gamma)) &= \overline{((c\beta + \gamma)|\alpha)} \\ &= \overline{(c\beta|\alpha) + (\gamma|\alpha)} \\ &= \bar{c}\overline{(\beta|\alpha)} + \overline{(\gamma|\alpha)} \\ &= \bar{c}(\alpha|\beta) + (\alpha|\gamma) \end{aligned}$$

□

When  $F$  is the field  $R$  of real numbers, the complex conjugates appearing in (3) and equation 4.1 are superfluous, however in the complex case they are necessary for consistency of the conditions for,

Without complex conjugates  $(i\alpha|i\alpha) = i^2(\alpha|\alpha) = -(\alpha|\alpha)$ ,

by condition (4),  $(\alpha|\alpha) > 0$ . Thus we get  $(i\alpha|i\alpha) = -(\alpha|\alpha) < 0$ . This is a contradiction to condition (4) of the definition.

Note that Throughout this chapter,  $F$  is either the field of real numbers or the field of complex numbers.

**Example 42.** 1. Scalar or dot product of vectors in  $R^3$ . The scalar product of vectors  $\alpha = (x_1, x_2, x_3)$  and  $\beta = (y_1, y_2, y_3)$  in  $R^3$  is the real number

$$(\alpha|\beta) = x_1y_1 + x_2y_2 + x_3y_3.$$

2. On  $F^n$  there is an inner product which we call the standard inner product. It is defined on  $\alpha = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  and  $\beta = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)$  by

$$(\alpha|\beta) = x_1\overline{y_1} + x_2\overline{y_2} + \dots + x_n\overline{y_n} = \sum_j x_j\overline{y_j}$$

In the real case, the standard inner product is often called the dot product or scalar product and is denoted by  $\alpha \cdot \beta$ .

3. For  $\alpha = (x_1, x_2)$  and  $\beta = (y_1, y_2)$  in  $R^2$ , let

$$(\alpha|\beta) = x_1y_1 - x_2y_1 - x_1y_2 + 4x_2y_2.$$

$$\begin{aligned} (\alpha + \beta|\gamma) &= (x_1 + y_1)z_1 - (x_2 + y_2)z_1 - (x_1 + y_1)z_2 + 4(x_2 + y_2)z_2 \\ &= x_1z_1 + y_1z_1 - x_2z_1 - y_2z_1 - x_1z_2 - y_1z_2 + 4x_2z_2 + 4y_2z_2 \\ &= (x_1z_1 - x_2z_1 - x_1z_2 + 4x_2z_2) + (y_1z_1 - y_2z_1 - y_1z_2 + 4y_2z_2) \\ &= (\alpha|\gamma) + (\beta|\gamma). \end{aligned}$$

Thus condition (1) is satisfied.

$$\begin{aligned} (c\alpha + \beta) &= cx_1y_1 - cx_2y_1 - cx_1y_2 + 4cx_2y_2 \\ &= c[x_1y_1 - x_2y_1 - x_1y_2 + 4x_2y_2] \\ &= c(\alpha|\beta) \end{aligned}$$

Thus condition (2) is satisfied.

Condition (3) is satisfied since  $x_1, x_2, y_1$  and  $y_2$  are real numbers.  $(\alpha|\alpha) = x_1^2 - x_2x_1 - x_1x_2 + 4x_2^2 = (x_1 - x_2)^2 + 3x_2^2$ . This follows that  $(\alpha|\alpha) > 0$  if  $\alpha \neq 0$ . Thus condition (4) is satisfied. Hence  $(\alpha|\beta)$  is an inner product on  $R^2$ .

4. Let  $V$  be  $F^{n \times n}$ , the space of all  $n \times n$  matrices over  $F$ . Then  $V$  is isomorphic to  $F^{n^2}$  in a natural way. Then

$$(A|B) = \sum_{j,k} A_{jk} \bar{B}_{jk}$$

defines an inner product on  $V$ . If  $B^*$  denotes the conjugate transpose matrix  $B^*$  of  $B$  defined as  $B_{kj}^* = \bar{B}_{jk}$ , then

$$(A|B) = \text{tr}(AB^*) = \text{tr}(B^*A).$$

This is because

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{tr}(AB^*) &= \sum_j (AB^*)_{jj} \\
 &= \sum_j \sum_k A_{jk} B_{kj}^* \\
 &= \sum_j \sum_k A_{jk} \bar{B}_{jk}
 \end{aligned}$$

5. Let  $F^{n \times 1}$ , the space of all  $n \times 1$  column matrix over  $F$ , let  $Q$  be an  $n \times n$  invertible matrices over  $F$ . For  $X, Y \in F^{n \times 1}$  set

$$(X|Y) = Y^* Q^* Q X.$$

We are identifying the  $1 \times 1$  matrix on the right with its single entry. When  $Q$  is the identity matrix this inner product is essentially the same as standard inner product.

6. Let  $V$  be the vector space of all continuous complex valued functions on the unit interval,  $0 \leq t \leq 1$ . Let

$$(f|g) = \int_0^1 f(t) \overline{g(t)} dt.$$

When we consider the space of real-valued continuous functions on the unit interval,

$$(f|g) = \int_0^1 f(t) g(t) dt.$$

7. This is a whole class of examples. One may construct new inner products from a given one by the following method. Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces over  $F$  and suppose  $(|)$  is an inner product on  $W$ . If  $T$  is a non-singular linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ , then the equation

$$pr(\alpha, \beta) = (T\alpha|T\beta)$$

defines an inner product  $pr$  on  $V$ . The following are two special cases.

- (a) Let  $V$  be a finite dimensional vector space, and let  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  be an ordered basis for  $V$ . Let  $e_1, \dots, e_n$  be the standard basis vectors in  $F^n$  and let  $T$  be the linear transformation from  $V$  into  $F^n$  such that  $T\alpha_j = e_j$ ,  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . In other words let  $T$  be the natural isomorphism of  $V$  onto  $F^n$  that is determined by  $\mathcal{B}$ . If we take the standard inner product on  $F^n$ , then

$$pr\left(\sum_j x_j \alpha_j, \sum_j y_j \alpha_j\right) = \sum_{j=1}^n x_j \bar{y}_j$$

Thus for any basis for  $V$  there is an inner product on  $V$  with the property  $(\alpha_j | \alpha_k) = \delta_{jk}$  and there exists exactly one such inner product. This method is used to determine the inner product on  $V$  corresponding to some basis.

- (b) Consider  $(f|g) = \int_0^1 f(t) \overline{g(t)} dt$  on the vector space  $V$  of all continuous complex valued functions on the unit interval. Let  $T$  be the linear operator multiplication by  $t$ . That is  $(Tf)(t) = tf(t)$ ,  $0 \leq t \leq 1$ .

$Tf = 0 \Rightarrow (Tf)(t) = 0 \quad \forall \quad t \in [0, 1]$ . That is  $tf(t) = 0 \quad \forall \quad t \in [0, 1]$ . Then  $f(t) = 0$  for  $t > 0$ . Since  $f$  is continuous, we have  $f(0) = 0$  and therefore  $f = 0$ . Thus  $T$  is non-singular. Now we construct a new inner product on  $V$  by setting

$$\begin{aligned} pr(f, g) &= \int_0^1 (Tf)(t) \overline{(Tg)(t)} dt \\ &= \int_0^1 f(t) \overline{g(t)} t^2 dt \end{aligned}$$

**Note 4.1.** Suppose  $V$  is a complex vector space with an inner product. Then for all  $\alpha, \beta \in V$ ,

$$(\alpha | \beta) = Re(\alpha | \beta) + iIm(\alpha | \beta)$$

where  $Re(\alpha|\beta)$  is the real part of  $(\alpha|\beta)$  and  $Im(\alpha|\beta)$  is the imaginary part of  $(\alpha|\beta)$ .

Since  $Im(z) = Re(-iz)$ , we have

$$Im(\alpha|\beta) = Re[-i(\alpha|\beta)] = Re(\alpha|i\beta).$$

Thus

$$(\alpha|\beta) = Re(\alpha|\beta) + iRe(\alpha|i\beta) \quad (4.2)$$

Thus inner product is completely determined by its real part.

**Definition 4.2.** The **quadratic norm** determined by the inner product is the function that assigns to each vector  $\alpha$  the scalar  $||\alpha||^2$ .

### Properties of quadratic Norm

1. For  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$

$$||\alpha \pm \beta||^2 = ||\alpha||^2 \pm 2Re(\alpha|\beta) + ||\beta||^2$$

2. Polarization Identities:

$$(\alpha|\beta) = \frac{1}{4}||\alpha + \beta||^2 - \frac{1}{4}||\alpha - \beta||^2.$$

$$(\alpha|\beta) = \frac{1}{4}||\alpha + \beta||^2 - \frac{1}{4}||\alpha - \beta||^2 + \frac{i}{4}||\alpha + i\beta||^2 - \frac{i}{4}||\alpha - i\beta||^2.$$

### Matrix of the inner product in the ordered basis $\mathcal{B}$

Suppose  $V$  is finite-dimensional, that  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  is an ordered basis for  $V$ . We show that the inner product is completely determined by the values  $G_{jk} = (\alpha_k|\alpha_j)$ . It assumes on pairs of vectors in  $\mathcal{B}$ . If  $\alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n$  and  $\beta = y_1\alpha_1 + \dots + y_n\alpha_n$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} (\alpha|\beta) &= (x_1\alpha_1 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n|\beta) \\ &= x_1(\alpha_1|\beta) + \dots + x_n(\alpha_n|\beta) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= x_1(\alpha_1|y_1\alpha_1 + \dots + y_n\alpha_n) + \dots + x_n(\alpha_n|y_1\alpha_1 + \dots + y_n\alpha_n) \\
&= x_1\bar{y}_1(\alpha_1|\alpha_1) + x_1\bar{y}_2(\alpha_1|\alpha_2) + \dots + x_n\bar{y}_1(\alpha_n|\alpha_1) + \dots + x_n\bar{y}_n(\alpha_n|\alpha_n) \\
&= \sum_k x_k \sum_j \bar{y}_j(\alpha_k|\alpha_j) \\
&= \sum_{j,k} \bar{y}_j G_{jk} x_k \\
&= Y^*GX
\end{aligned}$$

where  $X, Y$  are the co-ordinate matrices of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}$ ,  $G$  is the matrix with entries  $G_{jk} = (\alpha_k|\alpha_j)$ . We call  $G$  the matrix of the inner product in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}$ . Also note that  $G$  is an invertible Hermitian matrix satisfying the condition

$$X^*GX > 0, X \neq 0. \quad (4.3)$$

If  $G$  is any  $n \times n$  matrix which satisfies 4.3 and the condition  $G = G^*$ , then  $G$  is the matrix in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}$  of an inner product on  $V$ . This inner product is given by the equation

$$(\alpha|\beta) = Y^*GX$$

where  $X, Y$  are the co-ordinate matrices of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  in the ordered basis  $\mathcal{B}$ .

### Exercises

1. Let  $V$  be a vector space and  $(|)$  an inner product on  $V$ .
  - (a) Show that  $(0|\beta) = 0$  for all  $\beta \in V$ .
  - (b) Show that if  $(\alpha|\beta) = 0$  for all  $\beta \in V$ , then  $\alpha = 0$ .
2. Let  $V$  be a vector space over  $F$ . Show that the sum of two inner products of  $V$  is an inner product on  $V$ . Is the difference of two inner products of  $V$  an inner product? Show that a positive multiple of an inner product is an inner product.
3. Describe explicitly all inner products on  $R^1$  and on  $C^1$ .
4. Verify that standard inner product on  $F^n$  is an inner product.
5. Let  $(|)$  be the standard inner product on  $R^2$ .
  - (a) Let  $\alpha = (1, 2)$ ,  $\beta = (-1, 1)$ . If  $\gamma$  is a vector such that  $(\alpha|\gamma) = -1$  and  $(\beta|\gamma) = 3$ , find  $\gamma$ .
  - (b) Show that for any  $\alpha \in R^2$  we have  $\alpha = (\alpha|e_1)e_1 + (\alpha|e_2)e_2$ .

## 4.2 Inner Product Spaces

**Definition 4.3.** *An inner product space is a real or complex vector space together with a specified inner product on that space.*

Note that a finite dimensional real inner product space is often called a **Euclidean Space**. A complex inner product space is called a **Unitary Space**.

**Theorem 4.1.** *If  $V$  is an inner product space, then for any vectors  $\alpha, \beta \in V$ , and any scalar  $c$ ,*

- (i)  $\|c\alpha\| = |c| \|\alpha\|$ ;
- (ii)  $\|\alpha\| > 0$  for  $\alpha \neq 0$ ;
- (iii)  $|(\alpha|\beta)| \leq \|\alpha\| \|\beta\|$ ; (Cauchy-Schwarz inequality.)
- (iv)  $\|\alpha + \beta\| \leq \|\alpha\| + \|\beta\|$ .

*Proof.* We have  $\|\alpha\|^2 = (\alpha|\alpha)$ . Thus (i) and (ii) can be easily verified using the definition of norm and inner product.

Proof of (iii):

It is true when  $\alpha = 0$ . Assume  $\alpha \neq 0$ . Then  $\|\alpha\| \neq 0$ . Define

$$\gamma = \beta - \frac{(\beta|\alpha)}{\|\alpha\|^2} \alpha.$$

Then  $(\gamma|\alpha) = 0$  and  $\|\gamma\|^2 > 0$ . But

$$\begin{aligned} \|\gamma\|^2 &= \left( \beta - \frac{(\beta|\alpha)}{\|\alpha\|^2} \alpha \mid \beta - \frac{(\beta|\alpha)}{\|\alpha\|^2} \alpha \right) \\ &= (\beta|\beta) - \frac{\overline{(\beta|\alpha)}(\beta|\alpha)}{\|\alpha\|^2} - \frac{(\beta|\alpha)(\alpha|\beta)}{\|\alpha\|^2} + \frac{(\beta|\alpha)(\beta|\alpha)\|\alpha\|^2}{\|\alpha\|^2\|\alpha\|^2} \\ &= (\beta|\beta) - \frac{(\beta|\alpha)(\alpha|\beta)}{\|\alpha\|^2} \\ &= \|\beta\|^2 - \frac{|(\alpha|\beta)|^2}{\|\alpha\|^2} \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $|(\alpha|\beta)| \leq \|\alpha\| \|\beta\|$ . This inequality is called Cauchy Schwarz Inequality.

Proof of (iv)

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\alpha + \beta\|^2 &= \|\alpha\|^2 + (\alpha|\beta) + \overline{(\alpha|\beta)} + \|\beta\|^2 \\
&= \|\alpha\|^2 + 2\operatorname{Re}(\alpha|\beta) + \|\beta\|^2 \\
&\leq \|\alpha\|^2 + 2\|\alpha\| \|\beta\| + \|\beta\|^2 \\
&= (\|\alpha\| + \|\beta\|)^2.
\end{aligned}$$

Hence We get  $\|\alpha + \beta\| \leq \|\alpha\| + \|\beta\|$ . □

**Remark 19.** Cauchy -Schwarz inequality has a wide variety of applications.

The proof shows that if  $\alpha$  is non zero then  $|(\alpha|\beta)| \leq \|\alpha\| \|\beta\|$  unless

$$\beta = \frac{(\beta|\alpha)}{\|\alpha\|^2} \alpha.$$

Thus equality occurs in (iii) if and only if  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are linearly dependent.

**Definition 4.4.** Let  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  be vectors in an inner product space  $V$ . Then  $\alpha$  is orthogonal to  $\beta$  if  $(\alpha|\beta) = 0$

Since  $(\alpha|\beta) = 0$  implies that  $(\beta|\alpha) = 0$ . That is  $\beta$  is orthogonal to  $\alpha$ . Hence we can simply say that  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are orthogonal instead of saying  $\alpha$  is orthogonal to  $\beta$ .

A set  $S$  of vectors in  $V$  is said to be **orthogonal** if all pairs of distinct vectors in  $S$  are orthogonal.

An **orthonormal set** is an orthogonal set with the additional property that  $\|\alpha\| = 1$  for every  $\alpha \in S$ .

Since  $(0|\alpha) = 0$ , the zero vector is orthogonal to every vector in  $V$  and is the only vector with this property. It is appropriate to think of an orthonormal set as a set of mutually perpendicular vectors, each having length 1.



**Example 43.** The standard basis of either  $R^n$  or  $C^n$  is an orthonormal set with respect to the standard inner product.

**Example 44.** The vector  $(x, y) \in R^1$  is orthogonal to  $(-y, x)$  with respect to the standard inner product, for  $((x, y)|(-y, x)) = -xy + yx = 0$ .

**Example 45.** For  $\alpha = (x_1, x_2)$  and  $\beta = (y_1, y_2)$  in  $R^2$ , let  $(\alpha|\beta) = x_1y_1 - x_2y_1 - x_1y_2 + 4x_2y_2$ . In this inner product  $(x, y)$  and  $(-y, x)$  are orthogonal if and only if

$$y^2 - x^2 + 3xy = 0 \Rightarrow y = 1/2 \cdot (-3 \pm \sqrt{13})x.$$

**Example 46.** Let  $V$  be the space of complex  $n \times n$  matrices, and let  $E^{pq}$  be the matrix whose only non-zero entry is a 1 in row  $p$  and column  $q$ . Then the set of all such matrices  $E^{pq}$  is orthonormal with respect to the inner product given by  $(A|B) = \text{tr}(AB^*)$ .

For,

$$\begin{aligned} (E^{pq}|E^{rs}) &= \text{tr}(E^{pq}E^{rs}) \\ &= \delta_{qs} \text{tr}(E^{pr}) \\ &= \delta_{qs} \delta_{pr}. \end{aligned}$$

**Example 47.** Let  $V$  be the space of continuous complex-valued (or real-valued) functions on the interval  $0 \leq x \leq 1$  with the inner product

$$(f|g) = \int_0^1 f(x) \overline{g(x)} dx.$$

Suppose  $f_n(x) = \sqrt{2} \cos 2\pi nx$  and that  $g_n(x) = \sqrt{2} \sin 2\pi nx$ , for any positive integer  $n$ . Then  $\{1, f_1, g_1, f_2, g_2, \dots\}$  is an infinite orthonormal set. In the complex case, we may also form the linear combinations  $1/\sqrt{2}(f_n + ig_n)$ ,  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ . In this way we get a new orthonormal set  $S$  which consists of all functions of the form  $h_n(x) = e^{2\pi inx}$ ,  $n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$ . The set  $S'$  obtained from  $S$  by adjoining the constant function 1 is also orthonormal.

**Theorem 4.2.** *An orthogonal set of non-zero vectors is linearly independent.*

*Proof.* Let  $S$  be a finite or infinite dimensional set of non-zero vectors in a given inner product space. Suppose  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_m$  are distinct vectors in  $S$ . Then  $(\alpha_j|\alpha_k) = 0$  for  $j \neq k$ . Let

$$\beta = c_1\alpha_1 + \dots + c_m\alpha_m.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} (\beta|\alpha_k) &= \left(\sum_j c_j\alpha_j|\alpha_k\right) \\ &= \sum_j c_j(\alpha_j|\alpha_k) \\ &= c_k(\alpha_k|\alpha_k) \quad (\text{since } (\alpha_j|\alpha_k) = 0 \text{ for } j \neq k) \end{aligned}$$

Since  $(\alpha_k|\alpha_k) \neq 0$ , we have

$$c_k = \frac{(\beta|\alpha_k)}{||\alpha_k||^2} \quad 1 \leq k \leq m.$$

Thus when  $\beta = 0$ , each  $c_k = 0$ , so  $S$  is an independent set.  $\square$

**Corollary 4.1.** *If a vector  $\beta$  is a linear combination of an orthogonal sequence of non-zero vectors  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$  then  $\beta$  is the particular linear combination*

$$\beta = \sum_{k=1}^m \frac{(\beta|\alpha_k)}{||\alpha_k||^2} \alpha_k$$

*Proof.* Suppose  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ , be an orthogonal sequence of non-zero vectors. Then

$$\beta = c_1\alpha_1 + \dots + c_m\alpha_m.$$

Then

$$(\beta|\alpha_k) = \left(\sum_j c_j\alpha_j|\alpha_k\right)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \sum_j c_j (\alpha_j | \alpha_k) \\
&= c_k (\alpha_k | \alpha_k) \\
&= c_k \|\alpha_k\|^2
\end{aligned}$$

This implies that

$$c_k = \frac{(\beta | \alpha_k)}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \quad 1 \leq k \leq m.$$

Hence

$$\beta = \sum_{k=1}^m \frac{(\beta | \alpha_k)}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \alpha_k$$

□

**Corollary 4.2.** : *If  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m\}$  is an orthogonal set of non-zero vectors in a finite-dimensional inner product space  $V$ , then  $m \leq \dim V$ .*

*Proof.* If  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m\}$  is an orthogonal set of non-zero vectors in  $V$ , then they are linearly independent. Hence  $m \leq \dim V$ . □

This says that the number of mutually orthogonal directions in  $V$  cannot exceed the algebraically defined dimension of  $V$ . The maximum number of mutually orthogonal directions in  $V$  is what one would regard as the geometric dimension of  $V$ , and we have just seen that this is not greater than the algebraic dimension.

**Theorem 4.3.** *Let  $V$  be an inner product space and let  $\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n\}$  be any independent vectors in  $V$ . Then one may construct orthogonal vectors  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  in  $V$  such that for each  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , the set  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k\}$  is a basis for the subspace spanned by  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_k$ .*

*Proof.* The vectors will be obtained by means of a construction known as the Gram-Schmidt Orthogonalization process. First let  $\alpha_1 = \beta_1$ . The other vectors are then given inductively as follows: Suppose  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ ,  $1 \leq m < n$  have been chosen so that for every  $k$ ,

$$\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k\}, \quad 1 \leq k \leq m$$

is an orthogonal basis for the subspace of  $V$  that is spanned by  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_k$ .

To construct the next vector  $\alpha_{m+1}$ , let

$$\alpha_{m+1} = \beta_{m+1} - \sum_{k=1}^m \frac{(\beta_{m+1}|\alpha_k)}{||\alpha_k||^2} \alpha_k.$$

Then  $\alpha_{m+1} \neq 0$ , for otherwise  $\beta_{m+1}$  is a linear combination of  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k$  and hence a linear combination of  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m$ . Further more, if  $1 \leq j \leq m$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} (\alpha_{m+1}|\alpha_j) &= (\beta_{m+1}|\alpha_j) - \sum_{k=1}^m \frac{(\beta_{m+1}|\alpha_k)}{||\alpha_k||^2} (\alpha_k|\alpha_j) \\ &= (\beta_{m+1}|\alpha_j) - (\beta_{m+1}|\alpha_j) \\ &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Therefore  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{m+1}\}$  is an orthogonal set consisting of  $m+1$  non-zero vectors in the subspace spanned by  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_{m+1}$ . Since an orthogonal set of non-zero vectors is linearly independent, it is a basis for this subspace.  $\square$

In particular when  $n = 4$ , we have

$$\alpha_1 = \beta_1 \tag{4.4}$$

$$\alpha_2 = \beta_2 - \frac{(\beta_2|\alpha_1)}{||\alpha_1||^2} \alpha_1 \tag{4.5}$$

$$\alpha_3 = \beta_3 - \frac{(\beta_3|\alpha_1)}{||\alpha_1||^2} \alpha_1 - \frac{(\beta_3|\alpha_2)}{||\alpha_2||^2} \alpha_2 \tag{4.6}$$

$$\alpha_4 = \beta_4 - \frac{(\beta_4|\alpha_1)}{||\alpha_1||^2} \alpha_1 - \frac{(\beta_4|\alpha_2)}{||\alpha_2||^2} \alpha_2 - \frac{(\beta_4|\alpha_3)}{||\alpha_3||^2} \alpha_3. \tag{4.7}$$

**Corollary 4.3.** *Every finite-dimensional inner product space has an orthonormal basis.*

*Proof.* Let  $V$  be a finite-dimensional inner product space and  $\{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n\}$  is a basis for  $V$ . They by using Gram-Schmidt process we can construct an orthogonal basis  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ . Then

$$||(\frac{\alpha_i}{||\alpha_i||})|| = 1 \quad i = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Hence to obtain an orthonormal basis, replace each vector  $\alpha_i$  by  $\frac{\alpha_i}{\|\alpha_i\|}$ ,  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Thus

$$\left\{ \frac{\alpha_1}{\|\alpha_1\|}, \frac{\alpha_2}{\|\alpha_2\|}, \dots, \frac{\alpha_n}{\|\alpha_n\|} \right\}$$

is an orthonormal basis for  $V$ .  $\square$

**Remark 20.** 1. Computations involving coordinates are simpler when we use orthonormal bases instead of arbitrary bases.

2. Suppose  $V$  is a finite dimensional inner product space. Then by using the equation  $G_{jk} = (\alpha_k | \alpha_j)$  we can associate a matrix  $G$  with every ordered basis  $\mathcal{B} = \{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  of  $V$ . Using this matrix we may compute inner products in terms of co-ordinates. If  $\mathcal{B}$  is an orthonormal basis, then  $G$  is the identity matrix, and for any scalars  $x_j$  and  $y_k$ ,

$$\left( \sum_j x_j \alpha_j | \sum_k y_k \alpha_k \right) = \sum_j x_j \bar{y}_j.$$

Thus in terms of an orthonormal basis, the inner product in  $V$  looks like the standard inner product in  $F^n$ .

**Remark 21.** Gram-Schmidt process is also used to test linear dependence of vectors. For suppose  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n$  are linearly dependent vectors in an inner product space  $V$ . To exclude a trivial case, assume that  $\beta_1 \neq 0$ . Let  $m$  be the largest integer for which  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m$  are independent. Then  $1 \leq m < n$ . Let  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$  be the vectors obtained by applying the orthogonalization process to  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m$ . Then the vector

$$\alpha_{m+1} = \beta_{m+1} - \sum_{k=1}^m \frac{(\beta_{m+1} | \alpha_k)}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \alpha_k.$$

is necessarily 0. For  $\beta_{m+1}$  is in the subspace spanned by  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$  and orthogonal to each of these vectors; hence it is 0 ( If a vector  $\beta$  is a linear

combination of an orthonormal sequence of non-zero vectors  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$  then  $\beta = \sum_{k=1}^m \frac{(\beta|\alpha_k)}{||\alpha_k||^2} \alpha_k$ . Conversely, if  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$  are different from 0 and  $\alpha_{m+1} = 0$ , then  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m$  are linearly dependent.

**Example 48.** 1. Consider the vectors Let  $\beta_1 = (3, 0, 4)$   $\beta_2 = (-1, 0, 7)$   $\beta_3 = (2, 9, 11)$  in  $R^3$  equipped with the standard inner product. Applying the Gram-Schmidt process to  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \beta_3$ , we obtain the following vectors.  $\alpha_1 = (3, 0, 4)$

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_2 &= \beta_2 - \frac{(\beta_2|\alpha_1)}{||\alpha_1||^2} \alpha_1 \\ &= (-1, 0, 7) - \frac{(-1, 0, 7)|(3, 0, 4)}{25} (3, 0, 4) \\ &= (-1, 0, 7) - (3, 0, 4) \\ &= (-4, 0, 3) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_3 &= \beta_3 - \frac{\beta_3|\alpha_1}{||\alpha_1||^2} \alpha_1 - \frac{\beta_3|\alpha_2}{||\alpha_2||^2} \alpha_2 \\ &= (2, 9, 11) - \frac{(2, 9, 11)|(3, 0, 4)}{25} (3, 0, 4) - \frac{(2, 9, 11)|(-4, 0, 3)}{25} (-4, 0, 3) \\ &= (2, 9, 11) - 2(3, 0, 4) - (-4, 0, 3) \\ &= (0, 9, 0). \end{aligned}$$

These vectors are non-zero and mutually orthogonal. Hence  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3\}$  is an orthogonal basis for  $R^3$ . Then any vector  $(x_1, x_2, x_3)$  in  $R^3$  can be written as a linear combination of  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$ .

$$(x_1, x_2, x_3) = \frac{3x_1 + 4x_3}{25} \alpha_1 + \frac{-4x_1 + 3x_3}{25} \alpha_2 + \frac{x_2}{9} \alpha_3.$$

We can say the same in a dual point of view. That is, if  $\{f_1, f_2, f_3\}$  is the basis of  $(R^3)^*$  which is dual to the basis  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3\}$  is defined

explicitly by the equations

$$\begin{aligned}f_1(x_1, x_2, x_3) &= \frac{3x_1 + 4x_3}{25}\alpha_1 \\f_2(x_1, x_2, x_3) &= \frac{-4x_1 + 3x_3}{25}\alpha_2 \\f_3(x_1, x_2, x_3) &= \frac{x_2}{9}\alpha_3.\end{aligned}$$

And these equations can be more generally written as

$$f_j(x_1, x_2, x_3) = \frac{((x_1, x_2, x_3)|\alpha_j)}{||\alpha_j||^2}.$$

Also note that  $\{\frac{1}{5}(3, 0, 4), \frac{1}{5}(-4, 0, 3), (0, 1, 0)\}$  is an orthonormal basis for  $R^3$ .

2. : Let

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $a, b, c, d$  are complex numbers. Set  $\beta_1 = (a, b)$ ,  $\beta_2 = (c, d)$ , and suppose that  $\beta_1 \neq 0$ . If we apply the orthogonalization process to  $\beta_1, \beta_2$  using the standard inner product in  $C^2$ , we obtain the following vectors:

$$\alpha_1 = \beta_1 = (a, b)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\alpha_2 &= (c, d) - \frac{(c, d)(a, b)}{|a|^2 + |b|^2}(a, b) \\&= (c, d) - \frac{c\bar{a} + d\bar{b}}{|a|^2 + |b|^2}(a, b) \\&= \left( \frac{cb\bar{b} - d\bar{b}a}{|a|^2 + |b|^2}, \frac{d\bar{a}a - c\bar{a}b}{|a|^2 + |b|^2} \right) = \frac{\det A}{|a|^2 + |b|^2}(-\bar{b}, \bar{a})\end{aligned}$$

Now the general theory tells us that  $\alpha_2 \neq 0$  if and only if  $\beta_1, \beta_2$  are linearly independent. On the other hand, the formula for  $\alpha_2$  shows that this is the case if and only if  $\det A \neq 0$ .

**Note 4.2.** Suppose  $W$  is a subspace of an inner product space  $V$ , and let  $\beta$  be an arbitrary vector in  $V$ . The problem is to find a best possible approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$ . This means, we want to find a vector  $\alpha$  for which  $\|\beta - \alpha\|$  is as small as possible subject to the restriction that  $\alpha$  should belong to  $W$ .

**Definition 4.5.** Suppose  $W$  is a subspace of an inner product space  $V$ , and let  $\beta$  be an arbitrary vector in  $V$ . A best approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$  is a vector  $\alpha$  in  $W$  such that  $\|\beta - \alpha\| \leq \|\beta - \gamma\|$  every vector  $\gamma$  in  $W$ .

**Theorem 4.4.** Let  $W$  be a subspace of an inner product space  $V$  and  $\beta$  let be a vector in  $V$ .

1. The vector  $\alpha$  in  $W$  is a best approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$  if and only if  $\beta - \alpha$  is orthogonal to every vector in  $W$ .
2. If a best approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$  exists, it is unique.
3. If  $W$  is finite-dimensional and  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  is any orthogonal basis for  $W$ , then the vector

$$\alpha = \sum_{k=1}^m \frac{(\beta|\alpha_k)}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \alpha_k$$

is the (unique) best approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$ .

*Proof.* First note that if  $\gamma$  is any vector in  $V$ , then  $\beta - \gamma = \beta - \alpha + \alpha - \gamma$ , and

$$\|\beta - \gamma\|^2 = \|\beta - \alpha\|^2 + 2 \operatorname{Re}(\beta - \alpha|\alpha - \gamma) + \|\alpha - \gamma\|^2. \quad (4.8)$$

Now suppose  $\beta - \alpha$  is orthogonal to every vector in  $W$ , that  $\gamma$  is in  $W$  and that  $\gamma \neq \alpha$ . Then since  $\alpha - \gamma$  is in  $W$ , it follows that

$$\|\beta - \gamma\|^2 = \|\beta - \alpha\|^2 + \|\alpha - \gamma\|^2 > \|\beta - \alpha\|^2. \quad (4.9)$$



Hence  $\alpha$  is a best approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$ .

Conversely suppose that  $\|\beta - \gamma\| \geq \|\beta - \alpha\|$  is a best approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$ . Then  $\|\beta - \gamma\| \geq \|\beta - \alpha\|$  for every  $\gamma$  in  $W$ . Hence from Equation 4.8, we get  $2 \operatorname{Re}(\beta - \alpha | \alpha - \gamma)$  for all  $\gamma$  in  $W$ . Since every vector in  $W$  may be expressed in the form  $\alpha - \gamma$  with  $\gamma$  in  $W$ , we see that

$$2 \operatorname{Re}(\beta - \alpha | \tau) + \|\tau\|^2 \geq 0$$

for every  $\tau$  in  $W$ . In particular, if  $\gamma$  is in  $W$  and  $\gamma \neq \alpha$ , we may take

$$\tau = -\frac{(\beta - \alpha | \alpha - \gamma)}{\|\alpha - \gamma\|^2}(\alpha - \gamma).$$

Then the inequality reduces to the statement

$$-2 \frac{|(\beta - \alpha | \alpha - \gamma)|^2}{\|\alpha - \gamma\|^2} + \frac{|(\beta - \alpha | \alpha - \gamma)|^2}{\|\alpha - \gamma\|^2} \geq 0.$$

This holds if and only if  $(\beta - \alpha | \alpha - \gamma) = 0$ . Therefore,  $\beta - \alpha$  is orthogonal to every vector in  $W$ . This completes the proof of the equivalence of the two conditions on  $\alpha$ .

ii). Suppose  $\alpha_1$  and  $\alpha_2$  are two best approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$ . Then  $\beta - \alpha_1$  is orthogonal to every vector in  $W$  and  $\beta - \alpha_2$  also orthogonal to every vector in  $W$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} (\alpha_1 - \alpha_2 | \alpha) &= (\alpha_1 - \beta + \beta - \alpha_2 | \alpha) \\ &= (\alpha_1 - \beta | \alpha) + (\beta - \alpha_2 | \alpha) \\ &= 0 + 0 = 0. \end{aligned}$$

Then  $\alpha_1 = \alpha_2$ . Hence a best approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$ , if it exists is unique.

iii) Suppose  $W$  is finite dimensional subspace of  $V$ . Then by Corollary 4.3,  $W$  has an orthonormal basis. Let  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  be a basis for  $W$ . Then

every element of  $W$  is a linear combination of the vectors  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$ . Now to prove that

$$\alpha = \sum_{k=1}^m \frac{(\beta|\alpha_k)}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \alpha_k$$

is the best approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$ , it is enough to prove that  $\beta - \alpha$  is orthogonal to every vector in  $W$ .

By the computation in the proof of Theorem 4.3,  $\beta - \alpha$  is orthogonal to each of the vectors  $\alpha_k$  ( $\beta - \alpha$  is the vector obtained at the last stage when the orthogonalization process is applied to  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n, \beta$ ). Thus  $\beta - \alpha$  is orthogonal to every linear combination of the vectors  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  and hence to every vector in  $W$ . If  $\gamma$  is in  $W$  and  $\gamma \neq \alpha$ , it follows that  $\|\beta - \gamma\| \geq \|\beta - \alpha\|$ . Therefore  $\alpha$  is the best approximation of  $\beta$  that lies in  $W$ .  $\square$

**Definition 4.6.** Let  $V$  be an inner product space and  $S$  any set of vectors in  $V$ . The orthogonal complement of  $S$  is the set  $S^\perp$  (can be read as  $S$  perp) of all vectors in  $V$  which are orthogonal to every vector in  $S$ .

The orthogonal complement of  $V$  is the zero subspace, and conversely  $0^\perp = V$ .

**Theorem 4.5.** If  $S$  is any subset of an inner product space  $V$ , then its orthogonal complement  $S^\perp$  is a subspace of  $V$ .

Proof: Clearly  $S^\perp$  is non-empty, since it contains 0. Let  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  be in  $S^\perp$ . Then by definition,  $(\alpha|\gamma) = 0$  for all  $\gamma$  in  $S$ ;  $(\beta|\gamma) = 0$  for all  $\gamma$  in  $S$ . Now for any scalar  $c$

$$\begin{aligned} (c\alpha + \beta|\gamma) &= (c\alpha|\gamma) + (\beta|\gamma) \\ &= c \cdot 0 + 0 \\ &= 0 \text{ for every } \gamma \text{ in } S. \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $c\alpha + \beta$  also lies in  $S^\perp$ . Hence  $S^\perp$  is a subspace of  $V$ .

Whenever the vector  $\alpha$  in 4.4 exists it is called orthogonal projection of  $\beta$  on  $W$ .

**Definition 4.7.** Let  $W$  be a subspace of an inner product space  $V$  and let  $\beta$  be a vector in  $V$  and  $\alpha$  in  $W$  is the best approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$ . Then  $\alpha$ , if it exists is called the orthogonal projection of  $\beta$  on  $W$ . If every vector in  $V$  has an orthogonal projection on  $W$ , the mapping that assigns to each vector in  $V$  its orthogonal projection on  $W$  is called the orthogonal projection of  $V$  on  $W$ .

If  $W$  is finite dimensional and  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  is any orthogonal basis for  $W$ , then we know that

$$\alpha = \sum_{k=1}^m \frac{(\beta|\alpha_k)}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \alpha_k$$

is the unique best approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$ . Hence the orthogonal projection of an inner product space on a finite-dimensional subspace always exists. Theorem 4.4 also implies the following result.

**Corollary 4.4.** Let  $V$  be an inner product space,  $W$  and finite dimensional subspace, and  $E$  the orthogonal projection of  $V$  on  $W$ . Then the mapping

$$\beta \rightarrow \beta - E\beta$$

is the orthogonal projection of  $V$  on  $W^\perp$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\beta$  be an arbitrary vector in  $V$ . Then  $E\beta$  is the unique best approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$ . Hence  $\beta - E\beta$  is orthogonal to every vector in  $W$ , i.e.  $\beta - E\beta \in W^\perp$ . Also for any vector  $\gamma$  in  $W^\perp$ ,  $\beta - \gamma = E\beta + (\beta - E\beta - \gamma)$ . Since  $E\beta$  is in  $W$  and  $(\beta - E\beta - \gamma)$  is in  $W^\perp$ , it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} \|\beta - \gamma\|^2 &= \|E\beta\|^2 + \|\beta - E\beta - \gamma\|^2 \\ &\geq \|\beta - (\beta - E\beta)\|^2. \end{aligned}$$

with strict inequality when  $\gamma \neq \beta - E\beta$ . Therefore,  $\beta - E\beta$  is the best approximation to  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W^\perp$ .  $\square$

**Example 49.** Consider  $R^3$  with standard inner product. Then the orthogonal projection of  $(-10, 2, 8)$  on the subspace  $W$  that is spanned by  $(3, 12, -1)$  is the vector

$$\alpha = \frac{((-10, 2, 8)|(3, 12, -1))}{9 + 144 + 1}(3, 12, -1) \quad (4.10)$$

$$= \frac{-30 + 24 + -8}{154}(3, 12, -1) \quad (4.11)$$

$$= \frac{-14}{154}(3, 12, -1). \quad (4.12)$$

The orthogonal projection of  $R^3$  on  $W$  is the linear transformation  $E$  defined by

$$(x_1, x_2, x_3) \rightarrow \left(\frac{3x_1 + 12x_2 - x_3}{154}\right)(3, 12, -1).$$

The rank of  $E$  is 1, therefore nullity is 2. We have

$$\begin{aligned} (x_1, x_2, x_3) \in N(E) &\Leftrightarrow E(x_1, x_2, x_3) = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow \left(\frac{3x_1 + 12x_2 - x_3}{154}\right)(3, 12, -1) = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow 3x_1 + 12x_2 - x_3 = 0 \\ &\Leftrightarrow (x_1, x_2, x_3) \in W^\perp \end{aligned}$$

Therefore  $N(E) = W^\perp$ . Dimension of  $W^\perp = 2$ . On computing

$$(x_1, x_2, x_3) - \left(\frac{3x_1 + 12x_2 - x_3}{154}\right)(3, 12, -1),$$

we can see that the orthogonal projection of  $R^3$  on  $W^\perp$  is the linear transformation  $I - E$  that maps the vector  $(x_1, x_2, x_3)$  onto the vector

$$\frac{1}{154}(145x_1 - 36x_2 + 3x_3, -36x_1 + 10x_2 + 12x_3, 3x_1 + 12x_2 + 153x_3).$$

**Theorem 4.6.** *Let  $W$  be a finite-dimensional subspace of an inner product space  $V$  and let  $E$  be the orthogonal projection of  $V$  on  $W$ . Then  $E$  is an idempotent linear transformation of  $V$  onto  $W$ ,  $W^\perp$  is the null space of  $E$ , and  $V = W \oplus W^\perp$ .*

*Proof.* (i)  $E$  is idempotent.

Let  $\beta$  be an arbitrary vector in  $V$ . Then  $E\beta$  is the best approximation to  $\beta$  that lies in  $W$ . In particular,  $E\beta = \beta$  when  $\beta$  is in  $W$ . Therefore,  $E(E\beta) = E\beta$  for every  $\beta$  in  $V$ ; that is,  $E$  is idempotent:  $E^2 = E$ .

(ii)  $E$  is linear

Let  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  be any two vectors in  $V$  and  $c$  an arbitrary scalar. Then  $E\alpha$  and  $E\beta$  are the best approximations to  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  by vectors in  $W$ . Hence,  $\alpha - E\alpha$  and  $\beta - E\beta$  are each orthogonal to every vector in  $W$ . Hence the vector

$$c(\alpha - E\alpha) + (\beta - E\beta) = c(\alpha + \beta) - (cE\alpha + E\beta)$$

also belongs to  $W^\perp$ . Since  $cE\alpha + E\beta$  is a vector in  $W$  as  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ , it follows from Theorem 4.4 that

$$E(c\alpha + \beta) = cE\alpha + E\beta.$$

Hence  $E$  is linear.

(iii)  $W^\perp$  is the null space of  $E$ .

Let  $N$  be the null space of  $E$ . To prove that  $N = W^\perp$ . Let  $\beta$  be arbitrary vector in  $N$ . Then  $E\beta = 0$  Now

$$\begin{aligned}\beta \in N &\Rightarrow \beta \in V \\ &\Rightarrow E\beta \text{ is the unique vector in } W \text{ such that } \beta - E\beta \text{ is in } W^\perp \\ &\Rightarrow 0 \text{ is the unique vector in } W \text{ such that } \beta - 0 \text{ is in } W^\perp \\ &\Rightarrow \beta \in W^\perp.\end{aligned}$$

Hence  $N$  is a subset of  $W^\perp$ .

Conversely suppose that  $\beta \in W^\perp$ . Then  $(\beta|\alpha) = 0$  for all  $\alpha$  in  $W$ . Then  $(\beta - 0|\alpha) = 0$  for all  $\alpha$  in  $W$ . Hence 0 is the best approximation to  $\beta$  by

vectors in  $W$ . Thus  $E\beta = 0$  and hence  $\beta$  is in  $N$ . So  $W^\perp$  is a subset of  $N$ . Therefore  $N = W^\perp$ .

(iv).  $V = W + W^\perp$

Let  $\beta$  be any vector in  $V$ . We have  $E\beta \in W$  and  $(\beta - E\beta) \in W^\perp$ . Then  $\beta = E\beta + (\beta - E\beta)$ . Then  $V = W + W^\perp$ . We have  $E\beta \in W$  Also  $W \cap W^\perp = \{0\}$ . For, if  $\alpha$  is a vector in  $W \cap W^\perp$  then  $\alpha \in W$  and  $\alpha \in W^\perp$ . Then  $(\alpha|\alpha) = 0$ . Therefore,  $\alpha = 0$ , and hence  $V$  is the direct sum of  $W$  and  $W^\perp$ .  $\square$

**Corollary 4.5.** *Let  $W$  be a finite-dimensional subspace of an inner product space  $V$  and let  $E$  be the orthogonal projection of  $V$  on  $W$ . Then  $I - E$  is the orthogonal projection of  $V$  on  $W^\perp$ . It is an idempotent linear transformation of  $V$  onto  $W^\perp$  with null space  $W$ .*

*Proof.* We know that the mapping  $\beta \rightarrow \beta - E\beta$  is the orthogonal projection of  $V$  on  $W^\perp$ . Since  $E$  is a linear transformation, this projection on  $W^\perp$  is the linear transformation  $I - E$ . Also

$$\begin{aligned}(I - E)(I - E) &= I - E - E + E^2 \\ &= I - E \text{ since } (E^2 = E)\end{aligned}$$

Moreover,  $(I - E)\beta = 0$  if and only if  $\beta = E\beta$ , and this is the case if and only if  $\beta$  is in  $W$ . Therefore  $W$  is the null space of  $I - E$ .  $\square$

Above theorem implies another result known as Bessel's Inequality.

**Corollary 4.6. (*Bessel's Inequality*)**

*Let  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  be an orthogonal set of non-zero vectors in an inner product space  $V$ . If  $\beta$  is any vector in  $V$ , then*

$$\sum_k \frac{|(\beta|\alpha_k)|^2}{||\alpha_k||^2} \leq ||\beta||^2$$

and equality holds if and only if

$$\beta = \sum_k \frac{(\beta|\alpha_k)}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \alpha_k.$$

*Proof.* Let

$$\gamma = \beta - \sum_k \left[ \frac{(\beta|\alpha_k)}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \right] \alpha_k.$$

Let

$$\gamma = \beta - \sum_k c_k \alpha_k,$$

where

$$c_k = \frac{(\beta|\alpha_k)}{\|\alpha_k\|^2}$$

Then  $\|\gamma\|^2 \geq 0$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} \|\gamma\|^2 &= (\gamma|\gamma) \\ &= (\beta - \sum_k c_k \alpha_k | \beta - \sum_k c_k \alpha_k) \\ &= \|\beta\|^2 - \sum_k (\beta | c_k \alpha_k) - \sum_k (c_k \alpha_k | \beta) + (\sum_k c_k \alpha_k | \sum_k c_k \alpha_k) \\ &= \|\beta\|^2 - \sum_k \bar{c}_k (\beta | \alpha_k) - \sum_k c_k (\alpha_k | \beta) + \sum_k c_k \bar{c}_k (\alpha_k | \alpha_k) \\ &= \|\beta\|^2 - \sum_k \bar{c}_k (\beta | \alpha_k) - \sum_k c_k \overline{(\beta | \alpha_k)} + \sum_k c_k \bar{c}_k \|\alpha_k\|^2 \\ &= \|\beta\|^2 - \sum_k \frac{\overline{(\beta | \alpha_k)}}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} (\beta | \alpha_k) - \sum_k \frac{(\beta | \alpha_k)}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \overline{(\beta | \alpha_k)} + \sum_k \frac{(\beta | \alpha_k)}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \frac{\overline{(\beta | \alpha_k)}}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \|\alpha_k\|^2 \\ &= \|\beta\|^2 - 2 \sum_k \frac{\overline{(\beta | \alpha_k)}}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} (\beta | \alpha_k) + \sum_k \frac{(\beta | \alpha_k)}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \overline{(\beta | \alpha_k)} \\ &= \|\beta\|^2 - \sum_k \frac{|(\beta | \alpha_k)|^2}{\|\alpha_k\|^2}. \end{aligned}$$

Now

$$\|\gamma\|^2 \geq 0 \Rightarrow \|\beta\|^2 - \sum_k \frac{|(\beta | \alpha_k)|^2}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \geq 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \|\beta\|^2 \geq \sum_k \frac{|\langle \beta | \alpha_k \rangle|^2}{\|\alpha_k\|^2}.$$

Also equality holds if and only if

$$\beta = \frac{\langle \beta | \alpha_k \rangle}{\|\alpha_k\|^2} \alpha_k.$$

□

**Remark 22.** 1. If  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ , is an orthonormal set,  $\|\alpha_k\| = 1$  for each  $k$ . Then Bessel's inequality says that

$$\|\beta\|^2 \geq \sum_k |\langle \beta | \alpha_k \rangle|^2$$

2. If  $\beta$  is in the subspace spanned by  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  if and only if

$$\beta = \sum_k \langle \beta | \alpha_k \rangle \alpha_k.$$

or if and only if Bessel's inequality is actually an equality. Of course, in the event that  $V$  is finite dimensional and  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  is an orthogonal basis for  $V$ , the above formula holds for every vector  $\beta$  in  $V$ . In other words, if  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  is an orthonormal basis for  $V$ , the  $k$ -th co-ordinate of  $\beta$  in the ordered basis  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  is  $\langle \beta | \alpha_k \rangle$ .

### Exercises

1. Consider  $R^4$  with the standard inner product. Let  $W$  be the subspace of  $R^4$  consisting of all vectors which are orthogonal to both  $\alpha = (1, 0, -1, 1)$  and  $\beta = (2, 3, -1, 2)$ . Find a basis for  $W$ .
2. Apply the Gram-Schmidt process to the vectors  $\beta_1 = (1, 0, 1)$ ,  $\beta_2 = (1, 0, -1)$ ,  $\beta_3 = (0, 3, 4)$  to obtain an orthonormal basis for  $R^3$  with the standard inner product.
3. Find an inner product on  $R^2$  such that  $\langle e_1 | e_2 \rangle = 2$ .



4. Let  $V$  be an inner product space, and let  $\alpha, \beta$  be vectors in  $V$ . Show that  $\alpha = \beta$  if and only if  $(\alpha|\gamma) = (\beta|\gamma)$  for every  $\gamma \in V$ .
5. Let  $W$  be a finite dimensional subspace of an inner product space  $V$  and let  $E$  be the orthogonal projection of  $V$  on  $W$ . Prove that  $(E\alpha|\beta) = (\alpha|E\beta)$  for all  $\alpha, \beta \in V$ .